## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar Series

# Volume 3 Derivatives (Panchavrttayah) 

Editor : Medhā Michika, AVG, Anaikatti



## E-Published by:



Arsha Avinash Foundation
104 Third Street, Tatabad, Coimbatore 641012, I ndia Phone: + 919487373635
E mail: arshaavinash.in@gmail.com www.arshaavinash.in

## श्री:

## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar

## Volume 3

# Derivatives (Pañcaṿrttayaḥ) 

Medhā Michika
AVG Anaikkatti, 2016

Copyright © 2016 by Medhā Michika All rights reserved.

The contents of this work may not in any shape or form be reproduced without permission from Medhā Michika.

All profit from the sales of this book goes towards the activities initiated by Śrī Pūjya Svamī Dayānanda Sarasvatī.

Electronic version of this book is available at:
Arsha Avinash Foundation
www.arshaavinash.in

Printed version of this book is available at:
Arsha Vidya Gurukulam, Coimbatore, TN, India www.arshavidya.in
Swami Dayananda Ashram, Rishikesh, UK, India
www.dayananda.org
Arsha Vidya Gurukulam, Saylorsburg, PA, USA
www.arshavidya.org
CreateSpace
www.createspace.com (Search by "medha michika")
Amazon of your country
www.amazon.com etc. (Search by "medha michika")

Tutorial videos to accompany this series of books will soon be available online. Search YouTube under "Medha Sanskrit".

## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar - Volume 3

## Table of Contents

Introduction ..... 1
Topic I - वृत्तिः (derived word) and विग्रहः (explanatory sentence) ..... 3
Topic II - Brief Explanation of Five Types of वृत्ति ..... 4

1. सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः (A new root derived from a root or a noun) ..... 4
2. कृत्-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived from a root) ..... 6
3. तद्दित-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived from a nominal base) ..... 8
4. समास-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived by compounding nouns) ..... 10
5. एकरोष-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived by keeping one word out of many) ..... 12
Topic III - इत् letters in प्रत्ययs ..... 14
Topic IV - Common Changes in अझs ..... 17
A. धातु as अङ ..... 17
6. वृद्धि takes place when the प्रत्यय is जित् or णित् ..... 17
7. If वृद्धि did not take place, गुण can take place ..... 18
8. Prohibition of गुण \& वृद्दि when the प्रत्यय is कित् or ङित्त् ..... 18
B. प्रातिपदिक as अङ. ..... 19
9. आदि-वृद्दि (वृद्धि on the first vowel of the अङ) takes place ..... 19
when the तद्धित-प्रत्यय is जित, णित, or कित्. ..... 19
10. लोप of the last अवर्ण or इवर्ण in अङ when the तद्धित-प्रत्यय begins with "य्" or a vowel ..... 20
11. गुण of the last उवर्ण in अझ्भ when the तद्वित-प्रत्यय begins with "य्" or a vowel ..... 20
12. युष्मद् and अस्मद् in singular are changed into त्वद् and मद్. ..... 21
Topic V - इडागमः (augment इट्) ..... 22
पश्चवृत्ति-विस्तराः
Topic VI - सनाद्यन्ताः Derived Roots ..... 23
सनादि-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to make a root) ..... 23
13. णिजन्तः (णिच्-पत्यय ending root). ..... 25
14. सनन्तः (सन-प्रत्यय ending root) ..... 28
द्वित्वम् (Reduplication) ..... 30

## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar - Volume 3

Topic VII - कृदन्तम Krdanta ..... 34
कृतु-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to a root to make a new nominal base) ..... 34
i. Basic sense of कृत-प्रत्यय ..... 35
ii. Additional sense of कृत्-पत्यय ..... 36

1. कृत्याः in कर्मणि \& भावे ..... 37
a. यत, क्यपे, णयत् (the content is "य") ..... 39
b. तव्यत, तव्य (the content is "तव्य") ..... 43
c. अनीयर् (the content is "अनीय") ..... 43
2. कृत्-प्रत्ययs in कर्तरि, that denote कर्ता (agent) ..... 46
a. तृच ..... 47
b. णवुल् ..... 50
c. क्विप् ..... 53
3. निष्ठा (क्त \& क्तवतुँ) ..... 55
a. क्ष ..... 56
b. क्तवतुँ ..... 63
4. शातृँ/ शानच् (Replacement for लट् and लृट्) ..... 66
a. शावृँ. ..... 71
b. शानच ..... 72
c. वसुँ ..... 80
5. भावे and other कारकs ..... 81
a. ल्युट् ..... 82
b. घज़. ..... 87
c. क्तिन् ..... 91
6. कृत्प्रत्ययs to make अव्ययs ..... 96
a. क्त्वा. ..... 97
b. ल्यप् ..... 100
c. तुमुन ..... 103
7. Summary of कृत-वृत्तिः ..... 107

## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar - Volume 3

Topic VIII - Taddhitānta तद्दितान्त्तम् ..... 108
तद्दित-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to a nominal base to make a new nominal base) ..... 108
लक्षण-वाक्यम ..... 109

1. तस्यापत्यम् (descendant of ...) ..... 110
a. अण/अज् ..... 111
b. इज् ..... 114
c. ढक् ..... 116
2. मत्वर्थीयाः (one who has ...) ..... 118
a. मतुँप ..... 119
b. इनिं ..... 122
c. विनिँ ..... 124
d. अच. ..... 126
3. तस्य भावः (the status of ...) ..... 128
a. त्व ..... 129
b. तल् ..... 131
c. ब्यज् ..... 133
4. प्राग्दिशीयाः (अव्ययs made of सर्वनाम) ..... 135
a. तसिँल् ..... 136
b. त्रलु/दा / र्हि ..... 139
c. थाल्/थमुँ ..... 142
5. Comparative \& superlative ..... 145
a. तरप. ..... 146
b. तमप् ..... 147
c. ईयसुँन् ..... 148
d. इष्ठन् ..... 151
6. अभूत-तद्भावे (new status) ..... 154
a. च्वेँ ..... 154
7. Summary of तद्दित-वृत्तिः ..... 156

## Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar - Volume 3

Topic IX - समासाः Samāsāḥ ..... 157
Basic concept of समास-वृत्तिः ..... 157
(A new प्रातिपदिक made by compounding सुबन्तs) ..... 157
i. The difference between समासः and सन्धिः ..... 157
ii. Pāṇini-sūtras enjoining regulations on समास ..... 158
iii. Process of making समास. ..... 158
iv. स्वपद-समासः अस्वपद-समासः (नित्यसमासः) ..... 159
v. Steps of understanding समास ..... 159

1. अव्ययीभाव-समासः (Type A) ..... 160
2. तत्पुरुष-समासाः (Type T) ..... 162
a. द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 2T) ..... 163
b. तृतीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 3T) ..... 165
c. चतुर्थी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 4T) ..... 166
d. पश्चमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 5T) ..... 167
e. षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 6T) ..... 168
f. सप्तमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 7T) ..... 170
g. कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type KT) ..... 171
h. नज-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type NT) ..... 174
i. कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समासः ..... 176
j. उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type UT) ..... 177
3. बहुव्वीहि-समासः (Type B) ..... 184
a. General बहुवीहि-समासः (Type 1~7B) ..... 186
Abbreviation of बहुव्रीहि-समास ..... 190
b. नज-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (Type NB) ..... 193
c. सह-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (Type SB) ..... 194
d. प्रादि-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (Type PB) ..... 195
4. द्वन्द्व-समासः (Type D) ..... 196
a. इतरेतर-द्वन्द्व-समासः (Type ID) ..... 197
b. समाहार-द्वन्द्ध-समासः (Type SD) ..... 199
5. Summary of समासवृतिः ..... 202
Topic X - एकरोषः Ekaśeṣaḥ ..... 2031. Basic concept of एकरोष-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derivedby keeping one word out of many)203
Apendix ..... 203

Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar - Volume 3

## Introduction

## Scope of Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar Volume 3

In Volume 1, we have studied the two types of words in Sanskrit and how they are syntactically connected in a sentence, by finding verbal and nominal suffixes attached to the root and the nominal bases respectively.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { धातुः (root) + तिङ्--पत्ययः (verbal suffix) = तिङन्त्तम् (verb) } \\
& \text { प्रातिपदिकम (nominal base) + सुप--प्रत्ययः (nominal suffix) = सुबन्तम् (noun) }
\end{aligned}
$$

In Volume 3 we will take a closer look at धातु (roots) and प्रातिपदिक (nominal bases).

धातुs are of two types: original धातुs and derived धातुs. Similarly, प्रातिपदिकs are of two types: underived प्रातिपदिकs and derived प्रातिपदिकs. Detailed information about them follows.

## i. धातु:

There are two types of धातुः (root).

## 1. Original धातु:

Original धातुs are about 2000 in number.
They are defined by Pāṇini and compiled in a book called "धातुपाठः".
2. Derived धातुः

Any number of धातुs can be derived grammatically from original धातु or nouns. Those derived धातुs are called सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिs.

## ii. प्रातिपदिकम

There are two types of प्रातिपदिक (nominal base).

## 1. Non-derived (अव्युत्पन्न) प्रातिपदिक

A meaningful group of letters, which is not a धातु or प्रत्यय (suffix), is called प्रातिपदिकम्.

## 2. Derived (व्युत्पन्न) प्रातिपदिक

प्रातिपदिकs are also grammatically derived from roots and nouns.
There are three ways of deriving प्रातिपदिकs.
i. Deriving a प्रातिपदिक from a धातु by adding a type of suffix called कृतु-प्रत्यय
ii. Deriving a प्रातिपदिक from a प्रातिपदिक by adding a type of suffix called तद्धितप्रत्यय
iii. Deriving a प्रातिपदिक by compounding two or more nouns (समासः)

In this volume we will study how the derived धातुs and प्रातिपदिकs are made.
A few key words to know for this study are:

* Derivation of a word is called व्युत्पत्तिः.
* A derived word is called वृत्तिः.
* A sentence which grammatically explains a वृत्तिः is called विग्रहः.

With reference to a given वृत्तिः (derived word), we utilize विग्रहः (explanatory sentence) to understand the व्युत्पत्तिः (derivation) of the word.

## Topic I

## वृत्तिः (derived word) and

## विग्रहः (explanatory sentence)

## वृत्तिः (derived words)

$\square$ वृत्ति is a word by which the meaning of other words is denoted.
E.g., eater is a वृत्ति, meaning "one who eats".
$\square$ वृत्ति is a word which needs explanation.
$\square$ There are 5 types of वृत्ति.

1. सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः (A new धातु derived from a धातु or a सुबन्त)
2. कृत्-वृत्तिः (A new प्रातिपदिक derived from a धातु)
3. तद्वित-वृत्तिः (A new प्रातिपदिक derived from $a$ प्रातिपदिक)
4. समास-वृत्तिः (A new प्रातिपदिक derived by compounding सुबन्तs)
5. एकरोष-वृत्तिः (Keeping one प्रातिपदिक out of many)

## विग्रहः (explanatory sentences)

$\square$ विग्रह is a sentence which explains the meaning of a वृत्ति.
$\square$ There are 2 types of विग्रह.

1. लौकिक-विग्रहः (in natural language)

This type of explanatory sentence is seen in the language, especially for our benefit, employed by traditional Vedanta teachers.
E.g., वेदानाम् अन्ताः वेदान्ताः ।
2. अलौकिक-विग्रहः (not in natural language)

This type of sentence is seen only in grammar books.
E.g., वेद् + आम् + अन्त + जस्

## Topic II

## Brief Explanation of

## Five Types of वृत्ति

## 1. सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः (A new root derived from a root or a noun)

$\square$ सनादि-प्रत्यय, a type of प्रत्यय (suffix), is suffixed to a धातु (root) or a सुबन्त (noun) to create a new धातु (root).
$\square$ A group of 12 प्रत्ययs, beginning (आदि) with सन, is called सनादिः.
$\square$ That which ends (अन्त) with सनादि-प्रत्यय is called सनाद्यन्त and it becomes a धातु by Pāṇini-sūtra 3.1.32 सनाद्यन्ता धातवः ।
$\square$ The new धातु is called सनाद्यन्त-धातुः (that root which ends with सनादि-प्रत्यय).
धातुः/सुबन्तम् + सनादिप्रत्ययः = new धातुः called सनाद्यन्तधातुः

Examples of सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः and विग्रहः

| धातुः | सनादि-प्रत्यय: <br> (in the sense of) | New धातुः called सनाद्यन्त-धातुः | लौकिक-विग्रहः | अलौकिक-विग्रहः |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ज्ञा (to know) | सन् (to desire to do ...) | जिज्ञास (to desire to know) | ज्ञातुम् ${ }^{0}$ इच्छा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ <br> जिज्ञासा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | ज्ञा + सन् $=$ जिज्ञास |
| कृ (to do) | सन् (to desire to do <br> ...) | चिकीर्ष (to desire to do) | कर्तुम् ${ }^{0}$ इच्छा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ <br> चिकीर्षा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | कृ + सन् = चिकीर्ष |
| ज्ञा (to know) | णिच् (to make <br> somebody do ...) | ज्ञापि (to make somebody know) | - | ज्ञा + णिच् $=$ ज्ञापि |
| कृ (to do) | णिच् (to make somebody do ...) | कारि (to make somebody do) | - | कृ + णिच् = कारि |

## Topic II - Brief Explanations of Five Types of वृत्ति

Some of the सनादि-प्रत्ययs are:

1) सन् (स is the content and न् is an indicatory letter) is used in the sense of "to desire to do ..." and suffixed to a धातु to make a new धातु whose meaning will be "to desire to do the action indicated by the धातु".

For example, to make a new धातु whose meaning is "to desire to know", the सन् प्रत्यय is suffixed to ज्ञा (to know) धातु. After some modifications, ज्ञा + सन becomes जिज्ञास. As it ends with one of the सनादि-प्रत्ययs, जिज्ञास is qualified to be a new धातु, and it can be conjugated as जिज्ञासति, जिज्ञासतः, etc.
2) णिच् (इ is the content and ण् and च् are indicatory letters) is used in the sense of "to make somebody do ..." and suffixed to a धातु to make a new धातु whose meaning will be "to make somebody do the action indicated by the धातु".

For example, to make a new धातु whose meaning is "to make somebody know", the णिच् प्रत्यय is suffixed to ज्ञा (to know) धातु. After some modifications, ज्ञा + णिच् becomes ज्ञापि. As it ends with one of the सनादि-प्रत्ययs, ज्ञापि is qualified to be a new धातु, and it can be conjugated as ज्ञापयति, ज्ञापयतः, etc.
3) यङ् (य is the content and ङ् is an indicatory letter) is used in the sense of "to do ... frequently or intensively" and suffixed to a धातु to make a new धातु whose meaning will be "to do the action indicated by the धातु frequently or intensively".

For example, पेपीय (to drink again and again) is a new धातु derived from पा (to drink) with यङ्. suffix. जङ्ग्य (to go frequently or intensely) is derived from गम् (to go) and यड्.
4) क्यच/काम्यचू/क्यङ् are suffixed to nouns in various senses to make a new धातु.

For example, "पुत्रीय" and "पुत्रकाम्य" are new धातुs. Both mean "to desire a son". They are derived from a noun "पुत्रम्" (son) suffixed by "क्यच्" and "काम्यच्", respectively.

More प्रत्ययs and their details are found in Topic VI.

## 2. कृतु-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived from a root)

$\square$ कृत्-प्रत्यय, a type of प्रत्यय (suffix), is suffixed to a धातु (root) to create a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base).
$\square$ That which ends with कृत्-प्रत्यय becomes a प्रातिपदिक by Pāṇini-sūtra 1.2.46 कृत्-तद्धितसमासाश्च।
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिक which ends (अन्त) with कृत्-प्रत्यय is called कृदन्तम् (that which ends with कृत्प्रत्यय).
धातुः + कृतपत्रत्ययः = new प्रातिपदिकम् called कृदन्तम्

Examples of कृतु-वृत्तिः and विग्रहः

| धातु: | कृत्-प्रत्ययः <br> (in the sense of) | कृत-वृत्तिः or <br> कृदन्तं प्रातिपदिकम् | लौकिक-विग्रहः | अलौकिक-विग्रहः |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ज्ञा (to know) | तृच् (agent) (...er) | ज्ञात (knower) | जानाति ${ }^{\text {III } / 1}$ इति ${ }^{0}$ ज्ञाता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | ज्ञा + तृच् = ज्ञातृ |
| ज्ञा <br> (to know) | क्त (object in past) (...ed) | ज्ञात (that which is known) | ज्ञायते ${ }^{\text {III/ } 1}$ इति ${ }^{0}$ ज्ञातः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | ज्ञा + क्त = ज्ञात |
| ज्ञा (to know) | कत्वा (having ...ed) | ज्ञात्वा (having known) | - | ज्ञा + क्तवा $=$ ज्ञात्वा |
| ज्ञा (to know) | ल्युट् (अन) (instrument or the meaning of धातु itself) | ज्ञान (by which something is known, or knowing itself) | ज्ञायते ${ }^{\text {II } / 1}$ अनेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ इति ${ }^{0}$, ज्ञाप्तिः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ धात्वर्थ ${ }^{7 / 1}$ । | ज्ञा + ल्युट् = ज्ञान |

Some of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs are:

1) तृच् (तृ is the content and च् is an indicatory letter) is used in the sense of the agent. In Sanskrit, the same thing is told as "तृच-प्रत्ययः कर्तरि प्रयुज्यते।". तृच् is suffixed to a धातु to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "the agent of the action indicated by the धातु".

For example, to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "the knower, agent of knowing,", the तृच् प्रत्यय is suffixed to ज्ञा (to know) धातु. ज्ञा + तृच् becomes ज्ञातृ. As it ends with one of the कृत्-पत्ययs, ज्ञातृ is qualified to be a new प्रातिपदिक, and it is declined as "ज्ञाता, ज्ञातारौ, ज्ञातारः", etc. in masculine.
2) $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ ( $त$ is the content and क is an indicatory letter) is used generally in the sense of the object of an action in the past. In Sanskrit, the same thing is told "क्र-पत्ययः कर्मणि भूते प्रयुज्यते।". क्त is suffixed to a धातु to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "the object of the past action indicated by the धातु".

For example, ज्ञात means "that which is known". क्त-ending words decline according to the gender of the noun which is being qualified by the क्त-ending word.
3) ल्युट् (यु is the content and ल् and ट् are indicatory letters) is suffixed to a धातु to indicate mainly the instrument or location of the action of the धातु, or the meaning of the धातु itself. In Sanskrit, "ल्युट्-पत्ययः करणे अधिकरणे भावे च प्रयुज्यते ।". The यु is replaced by अन. The new प्रातिपदिक becomes अ-ending and is mainly used in neuter gender.
4) क्त्वा (त्वा is the content and क् is an indicatory letter) is used to indicate an action which happens prior to another action. The agent of both actions has to be the same. The new प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय (indeclinable).

More प्रत्ययs and their details are found in Topic VII.

## 3. तद्दित-वुत्तिः (A new nominal base derived from a nominal base)

$\square$ तद्धित-प्रत्यय, a type of प्रत्यय, is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक to create a new प्रातिपदिक.
$\square$ That which ends with तद्धित-प्रत्यय becomes a प्रातिपदिक by Pāṇini-sūtra 1.2.46 कृत-तद्धितसमासाश्च।
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिकम् which ends with तद्वित-प्रत्यय is called तद्धितान्त (that which ends with तद्यित-प्रत्यय).

## प्रातिपदिकम् + तद्धितप्रत्ययः $=$ new प्रातिपदिकम् called तद्धितान्तम्

For certain तद्धित-पत्ययs to be suffixed, प्रातिपदिक has to be with certain विभक्ति (case). For example, त्व, one of the तद्धित-प्रत्ययs, is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक ending with $6^{\text {th }}$ case.

Examples of तद्वित-वृत्तिः :

| प्रातिपदिकम् | तद्वित-प्रत्ययः <br> (in the sense of) | तद्धित-वृत्तिः / <br> तद्धितान्तं प्रातिपदिकम् | लौकिक-विग्रहः | अलौकिक-विग्रहः |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| एक (one) | त्व (the status of ...) | एकत्व (oneness) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { एकस्य }{ }^{6 / 1} \text { भावः }{ }^{1 / 1} \\ & \text { एकत्वम् }{ }^{1 / 1} \text { । } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { एक + डस्स् + त्व } \\ & =\text { एकत्व } \end{aligned}$ |
| एक (one) | ष्यज् (the status of ...) | ऐक्य (oneness) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { एकस्य }{ }^{6 / 1} \text { भावः }{ }^{1 / 1} \\ & \text { ऐक्यम् }{ }^{1 / 1} \text { । } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { एक + डस्स् + ष्यज् } \\ & =\text { ऐक्य } \end{aligned}$ |
| भग (virtue in absolute measure) | मतुँपू (one who possesses ...) | भगवत् (one who has भग, the lord) | भगः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ अस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ अस्ति ${ }^{I I I} / 1$ इति ${ }^{0}$ भगवान् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | $\begin{aligned} & \text { भग + सुँ + मतुँप् } \\ & \text { = भगवत् } \end{aligned}$ |
| ज्ञान (know- <br> ledge) | इनिँ (one who possesses ...) | ज्ञानिन (a person who has knowledge) | ज्ञानम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ अस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ अस्ति ${ }^{I I I} / 1$ इति ${ }^{0}$ ज्ञानी 1/1। | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ज्ञान + सुँ + इन् } \\ & =\text { ज्ञानिन् } \end{aligned}$ |
| भरत <br> (Bharata) | अण् <br> (descendant of ...) | भारत (descendant of भरत) | भरतस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ अपत्य ${ }^{1 / 1}$ <br> पुमान् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ भारतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | $\begin{aligned} & \text { भरत + ङस्स + अण् } \\ & \text { = भारत } \end{aligned}$ |
| तद (that) | तसिँल् ( $5^{\text {th }}$ case of ...) | ततः (from that) | तस्मात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ । | $\begin{aligned} & \text { तद् + ङनसिँ + तसिल् } \\ & =\text { ततस् } \end{aligned}$ |
| तद (that) | थाल् (in ... manner) | तथा (in that manner) | तेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ प्रकारेण ${ }^{3 / 1}$ । | $\begin{aligned} & \text { तद्न + टा + थाल् } \\ & \text { = तथा } \end{aligned}$ |

$\square$ Note that inside the तद्धित-वृत्तिs all the सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided.

## Topic II - Brief Explanations of Five Types of वृत्ति

Some of the तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are:

1) त्व is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक with a $6^{\text {th }}$ case nominal suffix to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "the status (भाव) of ...". For example, त्व is suffixed to एक (one) with ङस्स ( $6^{\text {th }}$ case singular suffix) to make a new प्रातिपदिक एकत्व (the status of one, oneness). Its विग्रहवाक्य is एकस्य भावः एकत्वम्। त्व-ending प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending neuter word.
2) ष्यज् (य is the content, ष् and ज् are indicatory letters) is used in the same sense as त्व. The indicatory letter ज् indicates that the first vowel of the अङ्भ (to which the suffix is enjoined) should take वृद्दि. Then the last अवर्ण (any type of अ) or इवर्ण (any type of इ) of the अङ drops. Thus the प्रातिपदिक ऐक्य can be derived from एक to mean "the status of one, oneness". घ्यज--ending प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending neuter word.
3) मतुँपू (मत् is the content, उँ and प् are indicatory letters) is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक with $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending to create a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "the one who has ...".
For example, to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "one who has भग", मतुँप् प्रत्यय is suffixed to भगः. After necessary modifications, such as the elision of the nominal suffix of भगः and substitution of म् of मतुँपू with वृ, the new प्रातिपदिक becomes भगवत् and declines in all three genders.
4) इनिँ (इन् is the content and इँ is indicatory letter) is used in the same sense as मतुँप. The last अवर्ण or इवर्ण of the अङ is elided and the new प्रातिपदिक becomes इन-ending word.
5) A variety of तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to names (proper nouns) to make a new प्रातिपदिक indicating "a descendent of ...". For example, भारत (son of भरत) is derived by suffixing अण्-प्रत्यय to a proper noun "भरत".
6) तसिँलू and थाल् (तस् and था are the contents, respectively) are suffixed to a सर्वनाम (pronoun) to make a new प्रातिपदिक indicating $5^{\text {th }}$ case meaning and "in the manner" of that pronoun. For example, ततः (from that) is derived from a सर्वनाम "तत्" (that) by suffixing तसिँल्-प्रत्यय.

More प्रत्ययs and their details are found in Topic VIII.

## 4. समास-वुत्तिः (A new nominal base derived by compounding nouns)

$\square \quad$ Two or more nouns which are meaningfully associated can be compounded into a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base).
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिकम् is called समास-वृत्तिः, or समासः.
$\square$ Generally a compound is made with two nouns at a time.
$\square$ Of the two nouns, the first noun is called पूर्वपदम, and the second noun is called उत्तरपदम्.
सुबन्तम् (पूर्वपदम) + सुबन्तम् (उत्तरपद्म) = new प्रातिपदिकम् called समासवृत्तिः

Examples of समास-वृत्तिः and विग्रहः:

| समासवृत्तिः | पूर्वपदम | उत्तरपदम् | लौकिक-विग्रहः | अलौकिक-विग्रहः |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| वेदान्त्तः | वेदानाम् | अन्ताः | वेदानाम् ${ }^{6 / 3}$ अन्ताः ${ }^{1 / 3}$ इति ${ }^{0}$ वेदान्ताः ${ }^{1 / 3}$ । | वेद + आम् + अन्त + जस् |
| तर्ककुरालः | तर्के | कुराल: | तर्के $7 / 1$ कुराल: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ इति तर्ककुरालः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | तर्क + ङि + कुराल + सुँ |
| परमात्मा | परमः | आत्मा | परमश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ असौ ${ }^{1 / 1}$ आत्मा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च इति ${ }^{0}$ परमात्मा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | परम + सुँ + आत्मन् + सुँ |
| अनात्मा | नज़ (अन) | आत्मा | न आत्मा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ इति ${ }^{0}$ अनात्मा $^{1 / 1}$ । | नज् + आत्मन् + सुँ |
| पीताम्बरः | पीतम् | अम्बरम | पीतम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ अम्बर ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ स: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ पीताम्बर: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | पीत + सुँ + अम्बर + सुँ |
| सलक्ष्मणः | सह | लक्ष्मणेन | लक्ष्मणेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ सह ${ }^{0}$ वर्तते ${ }^{[I / 1}{ }^{1 / 2 त}{ }^{0}$ सलक्ष्मणः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ । | सह + लक्ष्मण + टा |
| रामलक्ष्मणौ | रामः | लक्ष्मणः | रामश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ लक्ष्मणश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामलक्ष्मण才 ${ }^{1 / 2}$ | राम + सुँ + लक्ष्मण + सुँ |

$\square$ Note that inside the compound all the सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided.
$\square \quad$ There are 4 types of समास, classified by which of the two words is predominant. (प्रधानम).

1. अव्ययीभाव-समासः (Type A)


- The meaning of पूर्वपदम् has predominance. (पूर्वपद-अर्थ-प्रधानम)

2. तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type T)


- The meaning of उत्तरपद्म् has predominance. (उत्तरपद-अर्थ-पधानम)
E.g., वटस्य (of the tree) + मूलम् (root) $=$ वटमूलम् (root of the tree) नीलम् (blue) + उत्पलम् (lotus) $=$ नीलोत्पलम् (blue lotus)

3. बहुवीहि-समासः (Type B)


अन्यपदम्

- The meaning of अन्यपद्म (a word other than the two) has predominance. (अन्यपद-अर्थ-प्रधानम)
E.g., पीतम् (yellow) + अम्बरम् (clothes) यस्य (for whom) सः (he is)
= पीताम्बरः (one for whom clothes are yellow) = विष्णु: (Lord Viṣnu)

4. द्वन्द्व-समासः (Type D)


- The meanings of both words have equal predominance. (उभयपद-अर्थ-प्रधानम)
E.g., रामः (Rāma) च (and) + लक्ष्मणः (Lakṣmaṇa) च (and) $=$ रामलक्ष्मणौ (Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa)
$\square$ Predominance is decided by supplying a verb and examining which पद is denoted by the verb. For example, "नीलोत्पलं विकसति ।" (Blue lotus blooms.) What blooms is the lotus, not the blue. Thus उत्पल (the lotus) is predominant in the compound. Similarly, in "पीताम्बरः गच्छति ।", neither yellow nor garment goes. Who actually goes is the meaning of another word, विष्णुः. Thus अन्यपद is decided to be predominant.

More details are found in Topic IX.

## 5. एकरोष-वुत्तिः (A new nominal base derived by keeping one word out of many)

$\square$ एक means "one", and शोष means "remaining, balance". Together they mean "remaining of one word".
$\square$ When two or more प्रातिपदिकs are present together in a same sentense, only one remain under certain conditions. This is called एकरोष. The one which remains represents other प्रातिपदिकs.

Examples of एकरोष-वृत्तिः and विग्रहः:

| एकरोष-वृत्तिः | लौकिक-विग्रहः | अलौकिक-विग्रहः |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| रामौ | रामश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामौ ${ }^{1 / 2}$ । | राम + सुँ + राम + सुँ |
| रामाः | रामश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामश्च ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामश्च ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामाः ${ }^{1 / 3}$ । | राम + सुँ + राम + सुँ + राम + सुँ |
| हंसौ | हंसी ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च $^{0}$ हंसश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ हंसो ${ }^{1 / 2}$ । | हंसी + सुँ + हंस + सुँ |
| भ्रातरौ | भ्राता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च $^{0}$ स्वसा $^{1 / 1}$ च $^{0}$ भ्रातरो ${ }^{1 / 2}$ । | भ्रातृ + सुँ + स्वसृ + सुँ |
| पुत्रौ | पुत्रश्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ दुहिता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च 0 पुत्रो ${ }^{1 / 2}$ । | पुत्र + सुँ + दुहितृ + सुँ |
| शुक्ठानि |  | शुक्क + सुँ + शुक्का + सुँ + शुक्欠 + सुँ |
| पितरौ | माता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च ${ }^{0}$ पिता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च ${ }^{0}$ पितरो ${ }^{1 / 2}$, मातापितरो ${ }^{1 / 2}$ वा ${ }^{0}$ । | मातृ + सुँ + पितृ + सुँ |

Some of the एकरोष examples are:

1) When there are two or more प्रातिपदिकs, which are in the same form when in the same case, only one प्रातिपदिक remains among them. For example, when they are two "राम"s which are to be used in the same case ending, only one form राम remains.The duality (the sense of two-ness) is expressed by the dual number of the nominal suffix when declined.
2) In the same manner, when any number of प्रातिपदिकs, which have the same form in the same विभक्ति, are used in one sentence, only one remains as एकरोषवृत्ति. The Number of the members is expressed when the एकरोषवृत्ति is declined.
3) When there are प्रातिपदिकs indicating male and female members of a class or species, only the masculine प्रातिपदिक remains among them. For example, हंसी is a female goose and हंस is a male goose. They both belong to the same species. When used in the same sentence, only one masculine form remains. The विग्रह of the word हंसौ can be "हंसी च हंसश्च हंसौ।" or "हंसश्च हंसश्च हंसौ।". Both are possible.
4) Similarly, when there are प्रातिपदिकs भ्रातृ (brother) and स्वसृ (sister), or पुत्र (son) and दुहितृ (daughter) in a sentence, used in used in the विभक्ति, only the masculine प्रातिपदिक remains. The विग्रह of the एकरोषवृत्ति will be "भ्रातरो" can be "भ्राता च स्वसा च भ्रातरो। " or "भ्राता च भ्राता च भ्रातरौ। ". Similarly, the विग्रह of the एकरोषवृत्ति "पुत्रो" can be "पुत्रः च दुहिता च पुत्रौ।" or "पुत्रः च पुत्रः च पुत्रे।".
5) When there are प्रातिपदिकs in the same form expressed in neuter gender as well as other genders, only the प्रातिपदिक in neuter remains. As in "शुक्तश्च शुक्टा च शुक्कुं च शुक्कानि।".
6) When there are प्रातिपदिकs पितृ (father) and मातृ (mother) in the same विभक्ति in a sentence, the एकरोष is optional. If the एकरोष happens, only the form पितृ remains as "माता च पिता च पितरौ।". If the एकरोष does not happen, they take विभक्ति separately and become 2 पदs. Then द्वन्द्ध समास happens, as "माता च पिता च मातापितरौ", मातृ word comes first because of the regulation which states the more respected member should come first in the द्वन्द्व-समास.

## Topic III - इत् letters in प्रत्ययs

## Topic III

## इत् letters in प्रत्ययs

## Definitions of इत letters

In प्रत्ययs, some extra letters are attached to the content of प्रत्ययs. These letters are called इत् (indicatory) letters. इत् letters are defined in 7 Pāṇini-sūtras.

The following definitions apply on Pāṇini's works, called उपदेशा, i.e. प्रत्ययs, धातुs, माहेश्वरसूत्राणि etc.

1. अनुनासिक (nasalized) vowel is इत्. (1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इते।)
e.g., उँ of मतुँपू (तद्धित-प्रत्ययः)
2. हल् (consonant) at the end is इत्. (1.3.3 हलन्त्तम् । उपदेशो इत)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { e.g., पू of ल्यप् (कृत्-पत्यत्यः) } \\
& \text { क् of अक् (प्रत्याहारः) }
\end{aligned}
$$

3. However, तवर्ग, स्, म् at the end of सुप् and तिङ् are not इत. (1.3.4 न विभक्तौ तुस्माः। हलन्त्यम् उपदेरो

इत) e.g., म् of अम् (सुप्-प्रत्ययः)
स् of भ्यस् (सुपू-प्रत्ययः)
स् of तस् (तिङ्-प्रत्ययः)
4. जि, टु, डु at the beginning of धातु are इत्. (1.3.5 आदिर्जिटुडवः।~ उपदेरो इत)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { e.g., टु of टुवेपृँ कम्पने (धातुः) } \\
& \text { डु of डुकृज् करणे (धातुः) }
\end{aligned}
$$

5. ष् at the beginning of प्रत्यय is इत्. (1.3.6 षः प्रत्ययस्य। ~ आदिः उपदेरो इत)
e.g., ष् of ष्यज् (तद्वित-प्रत्ययः)
6. चवर्ग and टवर्ग at the beginning of प्रत्यय is इत. (1.3.7 चुटू । ~ प्रत्ययस्य आदिः उपदेइो इत)
e.g., ण् of णिच् (सनादि-प्रत्ययः)
7. रु, शा, and कवर्ग at the beginning of प्रत्यय is इत, unless the प्रत्यय is a तद्धित-प्रत्यय. (1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते । प्रत्ययस्य आदि: उपदेशो इत)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { e.g., कु of ल्यप् (कृत्-प्रत्ययः) } \\
\text { क् of क्त (कृत्-प्रत्ययः) }
\end{array}
$$

All the इत् letters are to be elided. (1.3.9 तस्य लोपः। ~ इतः)

## Topic III - इत् letters in प्रत्ययs

## Giving nicknames to प्रत्ययs based on इत letters

$\square$ In क्यप् प्रत्यय, इत् letters are क् and प. Thus the क्विप् प्रत्यय can be called कित् (one whose इत् is क्) or पित् (one whose इत् is प).
$\square$ These are बहुव्रीहि-समास (a type of compound) and their विग्रहवाक्यs (explanatory sentences) are:

क् इत् यस्य, सः कित, क्यप्।
पू इत् यस्य, सः पित, क्यप् । The one whose (यस्य) इत् is प, is पित, an adjective to क्यप्.

## Exercise 1:

These are the प्रत्ययs we are going to study in this book. Find out which letters are इत, and cross them out. Write the content of the प्रत्यय, and make names of the प्रत्यय based on the इत् letters. Note that तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are listed from number 22 onwards.

| प्रत्ययाः | letters | content | इत, sūtra, and nick name |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. गिच् |  | इ | णु, 1.3.5 चुटू।, णित; च, 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।, चित् |
| 2. सन् | स् अ न् |  |  |
| 3. यङ् | यू अ ड्. |  |  |
| 4. तृच् | त् ॠ च् |  |  |
| 5. णवुल् | ण् व् उ ल |  |  |
| 6. यत् | यू अ त् |  |  |
| 7. क्यप् | क् यू अ प् |  |  |
| 8. गयत् | ण् यू अ त् |  |  |
| 9. तव्य | त् अ व् य् अ |  |  |
| 10. अनीयर् | अ न् ई य् अ र् |  |  |
| 11. क्त | क त् अ |  |  |
| 12. क्तवतुँ | क त् अ व् अ त् उँ |  |  |
| 13. घज् | घ. अ ज़ |  |  |
| 14. ल्युट् | ल् य् उ ट् |  |  |
| 15. कितन् | क त् इ न् |  |  |

Topic III - इत् letters in प्रत्ययs

| प्रत्यया: | letters | content | name based on इत् |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16. क्त्वा | क त् व् आ |  |  |
| 17. ल्यप् | लु यू अ प् |  |  |
| 18. शातृँ | श अ त् 咎 |  |  |
| 19. शानच् | शा आ न् अ च् |  |  |
| 20. वसुँ | व् अ स् उँ |  |  |
| 21. अण् | अ ण् |  |  |
| 22. अज् | अ ञ् |  |  |
| 23. इज् | इ ज् |  |  |
| 24. ढक् | ढ् अ क् |  |  |
| 25. मतुँप् | म् अ त् उँ प् |  |  |
| 26. इनिँ | इ न् ईँ |  |  |
| 27. विनिँ | व् इ न् ईँ |  |  |
| 28. अच् | अ च् |  |  |
| 29. त्व | त् व् अ |  |  |
| 30. तल् | त् अ ल् |  |  |
| 31. ष्यज् | ष् य् अ ज़ |  |  |
| 32. तसिँल | त् अ स् इँ ल् |  |  |
| 33. त्रल् | तू र् अ ल |  |  |
| 34. दा | द आ |  |  |
| 35. थाल् | थ् आ ल् |  |  |
| 36. तरप् | त् अ र् अ प् |  |  |
| 37. तमप् | त् अ म् अ प् |  |  |
| 38. ईयसुँन् | ई यू अ स् उँ न् |  |  |
| 39. इष्ठन् | इ ष् ठ् अ न् |  |  |
| 40. कप् | क अ प् |  |  |

Exercise 2:
Do the same to तिङ्-प्रत्यय and सुप--प्रत्ययs.

## Topic IV

## Common Changes in अङ゙s

When a प्रत्यय is suffixed to a प्रकृति, that प्रकृति is called अङ. There are some common changes enjoined to अझ゙s.

## A. धातु as अङ

When a प्रत्यय is suffixed to a धातु, the धातु is called अङ्ञ and वृद्दि or गुण can take place in that अङ्भ depending on the इत letter of the प्रत्यय.


## 1. वृद्धि takes place when the प्रत्यय is जित or णित

- at the last इक, if the धातु ends with इक. (7.2.115 अचो ज्णिति । ~ अङ्झस्य वृद्यि:)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { E.g.1, नी + ण्वुल् } & \text { To "नी" धातु, णुुल् प्रत्यय is suffixed. } \\
\text { नी }+ \text { अक } & \text { णवुलू is replaced by अक. } \\
\text { नै + अक } & \text { Being a णित् प्रत्यय, ण्वुल् causes वृद्धि in the अङ् } \\
\text { नाय् + अक } & \text { अय्-अव्-आय्-आव् सन्धि is applied. } \\
\text { नायक (one who leads) }
\end{array}
$$

- at the penultimate short अ, if the धातु has one. (7.2.116 अत उपधायाः । ~ अङ्झस्य वृद्धि: ज्णिणति)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { E.g. 2, पठ् + ण्वुल् } & \text { To "पठ्" धातु, णवुल् प्रत्यय is suffixed. } \\
\text { पठ् + अक } & \text { णवुल् is replaced by अक. } \\
\text { पाठ् + अक } & \text { Being a णित् प्रत्यय, ण्वुल् causes वृद्धि in the अङ्भ. } \\
\text { पाठक (one who studies) } \\
\text { E.g. 3, पठ् + घज् } & \text { To "पठ्" धातु, घज् प्रत्यय is suffixed. } \\
\text { पठ् + अ } & \text { इत् letters are removed. } \\
\text { पाठ् + अ } & \text { Being a जित् प्रत्यय, घज् causes वृद्दि in the अङ. } \\
\text { पाठ (study) }
\end{array}
$$

## 2. If वुद्धि did not take place, गुण can take place

- at the last इक, if the धातु ends with इक. (7.3.84 सार्वधातुकार्धधातुकयोः । ~ अझ्भस्य गुणः)

```
E.g. 1, नी + तृच् To "नी" धातु, तृच् प्रत्यय is suffixed.
    नी + तृ इत् letter is removed.
    ने + तृ तृच् प्रत्यय causes गुण in the अङ.
    नेतृ (one who leads)
E.g. 2, कृ + ल्युट् To "कृ" धातु, ल्युट् प्रत्यय is suffixed.
    कृ + अन ल्युट् is replaced by अन.
    कर् + अन गुण takes place in the अङ्भ caused by the ल्युट् प्रत्यय.
    कर् + अण णत्व-सन्धि is applied.
    करण (means of doing)
```

- at the penultimate short इक, if the धातु has one. (7.3.86 पुगन्तलघूपधस्य च। ~ अङ्स्य गुणः सार्व...)

```
E.g. 3, बुध् + घञ् To "बुधू" धातु, घज् प्रत्यय is suffixed.
बुध् + अ इत् letters are removed.
बोध् + अ गुण takes place in the अङ्झ caused by the "घज्" प्रत्यय.
बोध (knowledge)
```

E.g. 4, इष् + ल्युट् To "इष्" धातु, ल्युट् प्रत्यय is suffixed.
इष् + अन ल्युट् is replaced by अन.
एष् + अन ल्युट् प्रत्यय causes गुण in the अझ्
एष् + अण णत्व-सन्धि is applied.
एषण (desire)
3. Prohibition of गुण \& वृद्दि when the प्रत्यय is कित or ङित्त (1.1.5 क्किति च । ~ न गुणवृद्दी)
E.g. 1, कृ + क्त्वा to "कृ" धातु, क्त्वा प्रत्यय is suffixed.

कृ + त्वा क् of क्त्वा is इत् letter, thus क् is removed.
Because the प्रत्यय is कित, गुण change is prevented in अङ्भ.
कृत्वा (having done)

## Topic IV Common Changes in अङ

## B. प्रातिपदिक as अङ

When a तद्वित-प्रत्यय is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक, that प्रातिपदिक is called अङ. If the प्रातिपदिक is followed by सुपू-प्रत्यय, the सुपू-प्रत्यय is elided and only प्रातिपदिक remains. There are some common operations on that अङ्भ according to the इत letter, or beginning letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय.

| प्रातिपदिकम् |
| :---: |
| (अङ्भम) |$+$ तद्यित-प्रत्ययः

## 1. आदि-वृद्धि (वृद्धि on the first vowel of the अङ) takes place

## when the तद्वित-प्रत्यय is जित, णित, or कित

Pāṇini-sūtras 7.2.117 तद्वितेष्वचामादेः । ~ अङ़स्य वृद्धिः जिणिति, and 7.2.118 किति च। ~ अङ्झस्य वृद्दि: तद्धितेष्वचामादेः describe this rule.
E.g. 1, ईश्वर + ङस्स् + ष्यज् To a प्रातिपदिक with $6^{\text {th }}$ case suffix, घ्यज् प्रत्यय is suffixed.

| ईश्वर | + य |
| :--- | :--- |
| ऐश्वर | + य |
| ऐश्वर् | + य |
| ऐश्वर्य (lordship) |  |


| E.g. 2, भरत + डस्स + अण् |  | To a प्रातिपदिक with $6^{\text {th }}$ case suffix, अण् तद्धित-प्रत्यय is suffixed. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| भरत | + अ | इत् letters are elided. सुप-प्रत्यय is also elided. |
| भारत | + अ | Being णित, अण् suffix causes वृद्दि on the first vowel of the अङ |
| भारत | + अ | The last अ of the अङ is elided by the next rule. | भारत (the descendant of भरत)


| E.g. 3, कुन्ती +ङ.स + ढक् |  | To a प्रातिपदिक with $6^{\text {th }}$ case suffix, ढक् तद्वित-प्रत्यय is suffixed. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| कुन्ती | + ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | इत् letters are elided. सुप--प्रत्यय is also elided. |
| कुन्ती | + एय | ढ is replaced by एय by 7.1.2 आयनेयीनीयियः फढखछघां प्रत्ययादीनाम् । |
| कौन्ती | + एय | Being कित, ढक्र suffix causes वृद्धि on the first vowel of the अङ्ग. |
| कौन्त् | + एय | The last ई of the अङ is elided by the next rule. |
| कौन्तेय (the descendant of कुन्ती) |  |  |

## 2. लोप of the last अवर्ण or इवर्ण in अङ when the तद्धित-प्रत्यय begins with "यू" or a vowel

Pāṇini-sūtra 6.4.148 यस्येति च । ~ भस्य अङ्झस्य तद्विते लोपः describes this rule.


For examples, see the examples of the previous rule.

## 3. गुण of the last उवर्ण in अङ् when the तद्धित-पत्यय begins with "यू" or a vowel

Pāṇini-sūtra 6.4.146 ओर्गुणः। ~ भस्य अझस्य तद्विते describes this rule.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { E.g., पाण्डु + डस्स् + अज् To a प्रातिपदिक with } 6^{\text {th }} \text { case suffix,अज् प्रत्यय is suffixed. } \\
& \text { पाण्डु }+\quad+\text { अ इत् letters are elided. सुप्-प्रत्यय is also elided. } \\
& \text { पाण्डो }+ \text { अ } \text { Since the अज् begins with vowel, the last उ of अङ takes गुण. } \\
& \text { पाण्डव् + अ अयवायाव-सन्धि takes place. } \\
& \text { पाण्डव (the son of Pāṇ̣̣u) }
\end{aligned}
$$

In the same manner, कौरव is derived from कुरु, राघव from रघु, भार्गव from भृगु, etc.

## 4. युष्मद् and अस्मद in singular are changed into त्वद् and मद.

युष्मद् and अस्मद्न are सर्वनाम (pronoun) indicating the listener and speaker, respectively. When these pronouns are used in singular and followed by a प्रत्यय or उत्तरपद in समास, they are changed into त्वद्न and मद्न respectively. Pāṇini-sūtra 7.2.98 प्रत्ययोत्तरपद्योश्च। ~ अङ्झस्य विभक्तौ त्वमावेकवचने मपर्यन्तस्य describes this rule.
e.g., युष्मद् +ङ.सिँ + तसिँल् $\quad$ To a प्रातिपदिक with $5^{\text {th }}$ case suffix, तसिँलू प्रत्यय is suffixed.

| युष्मद् + <br> त्वद्$+$ तस् | इत् letters are elided. सुप--प्रत्यय is also elided. <br> Because युष्मद् is used in the sense of singular here, and it is <br> followed by a प्रत्यय, युष्मद् is changed into त्वद्न. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| त्वत् $\quad+$ तस् | By 8.4.55 खरि च ।, चर्त्व-सन्धि takes place. |
| त्वत्तस् (from you) |  |

In the same manner, त्वदीय, त्वत्प्रसाद, त्वदन्य, etc. are formed.
e.g., अस्मद्न+ङि + मनसू+सुँ A sentence "मयि (in me) मनः (the mind) यस्य (whose) सः।" is qualified to be a compound.
अस्मद् + मनस् सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided.
मद् + मनस् Because अस्मद् is used in the sense of singular here, and it is followed by प्रत्यय, अस्मद् is changed into मद्.
मन् + मनस् By 8.4.45 यरोऽनुनासिकेऽनुनासिको वा।, दू is replaced by न.
मन्मनस् (the one whose mind is in me)
In the same manner, मत्तस, मदीय, मद्भक्त, मदात्मन, मत्पर, etc. are formed.

## Topic V Common Changes in अङ्झ

## Topic V

## इडागमः (augment इट्)

$\square$ आगमः (augment) is an additional letter to an entity such as प्रत्यय, धातु, etc., without adding any meaning. It is enjoined by Pānini-sūtra.
$\square$ आगम does not have its own entity. For example, when an आगम is attached to a प्रत्यय, it becomes a part of the प्रत्यय.इट् is an आगम attached to the beginning of a प्रत्यय under some conditions listed below:

धातु has to be:
Condition 1) सेट् धातु
सेट्र is a type of धातु which comes with (सह) इट्र. In धातुकोइाः सेट् is indicated as " S " in the third column after the first two columns for 1 to 10 conjugation and $\mathrm{P} / \mathrm{A} / \mathrm{U}$.

प्रत्यय has to be:
Condition 1) आर्धधातुक-प्रत्यय
आर्धधातुक is a technical term for a प्रत्यय which is suffixed to धातु, and not तिड्. or रित्.
Condition 2) starting with वल् (any consonant other than य)

To see how इट् is attached, प्रत्ययs conforming to the conditions are listed with a सेट् धातु.

| सेट् धातु | प्रत्यय | modification process | final form |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| विद् (2P S) to know | + सन् $=$ | विविद् + इट् + स $=$ | विविदिष |
|  | + तृच् $=$ | वेद् + इट् + तृ $=$ | वेदितृ |
|  | + कत्वा $=$ | विद्न + इट् + त्वा $=$ | विदित्वा |
|  | + तुमुन् $=$ | वेद् + इट् + तुम $=$ | वेदितुम |
|  | + क्त $=$ | विद् + इट् + त $=$ | विदित |
|  | + क्तवतुँ $=$ | विद्न + इट् + तवत् $=$ | विदितवत् |
|  | + तव्य $=$ | वेद् + इट् + तव्य $=$ | वेदितव्य |

## पश्चवृत्ति-विस्तराः

We have seen पश्चवृत्त्तयः in brief. From here onwards, we will see them in detail.

## Topic VI

## सनाद्यन्ताः

## Derived Roots

## सनादि-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to make a root)

$\square$ सनादि-प्रत्ययs are the suffixes added to a धातु (root) or a सुबन्तं पद्म् (noun) to make a new धातु.
धातुः /सुबन्तम् + सनादि-प्रत्ययः = new धातुः
$\square$ There are 12 सनादि-प्रत्ययs, found in Pāṇini-sūtras 3.1.5 to 3.1.31. Pāṇini-sūtra 3.1.32 defines सनादि-प्रत्यय-ending words to be qualified to be called धातु.
$\square$ The new धातुः which ends (अन्त) with सनादि-प्रत्यय is called सनाद्यन्त-धातु (that which end with सनादि type of suffix).सनादि-पत्रत्ययs indicate actions related to the धातु or सुबन्तं पद्म to which the सनादि-प्रत्ययs are suffixed.
$\square$ The new धातुs enjoy the status of धातु, that is, they will be conjugated, or transformed into कृदन्तs by suffixing कृत्-प्रत्ययs.

Here are the 12 सनादि-प्रत्ययs:

1. सन् (desiderative)
2. क्यच् (नामधातु, a root from noun)
e.g., आत्मनः (for himself) पुत्रम् (son) इच्छति (desires) इति पुत्रीयति (he desires to have a son)।
3. काम्यच् (नामधातु)
e.g., हितम् (benefit) इच्छति (desires) इति हितकाम्यति (desires for benefit)।
4. क्यड् (नामधातु)
5. क्विप् (नामधातु)
6. क्यष् (नामधातु)
7. णिङ् (नामधातु)
8. णिच (causative)
9. यङ् (Intensive)
e.g., पौनःपुन्येन (repeatedly) भृरां (intensively) द्रमति (moves around) इति दन्द्रम्यते ।
e.g., पौनःपुन्येन भृरां हन्ति (injures) इति जङ्घ्घन्यते ।
e.g., पौनःपुन्येन पिबति (drinks) इति पेपीयते ।
10. यक् (नामधातु)
e.g., अभि + असू + यक् = अभ्यसूय, अभ्यसूयति (He feels jealous.)
11. आय (for गुपू, धूप, etc. धातुs)
12. ईयङ् (for ऋत् धातु)
$\square$ When studying सनादि--्रत्ययs, the following things are to be known:
1) What meaning सनादि-प्रत्यय brings
2) Content of the सनादि-प्रत्यय
3) इत् letters of the सनादि-प्रत्यय and their functions
4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ (that which immediately precedes a प्रत्यय)
5) How the new धातु is conjugated, and which कृत्-प्रत्ययs are generally suffixed
6) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the सनाद्यन्त-धातु-वृत्तिः

In this book, each सनादि-प्रत्यय will be introduced with these 6 aspects.

## 1. णिजन्तः (णिचु-प्रत्यय ending root)

The णिच्-ending धातु is commonly called णिजन्तः (that which ends with णिच.)
$\square$ णिच् is suffixed to a धातु to make a new धातु.
Of the सनादि-पत्ययs, the following are the 6 things to be known regarding "णिच":

1) Which sense णिच् brings

- Causative (to make/cause somebody do ...)
- Note that णिच is suffixed to धातुs in $10^{\text {th }}$ conjugation without causative sense.

2) Content of णिच्

- इ

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of णिच् and their function

- ण् - By 1.3.7 चुटू. It is to cause वृद्धि on अङ, if applicable.
- च् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्. It is for intonation

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्न

- Being णित् प्रत्यय to धातु, वृद्धि and गुण can take place. See Topic IV A for details.
- When the धातु is आ ending, an augment प् is added to the end of the धातु. E.g., ज्ञा + णिच् = ज्ञापि, स्था + णिच् = स्थापि, etc. Note that there are some exceptions such as अधि + इङ् to study + णिच् = अध्यापि, and गम् + णिच् = गमि.

5) How the new धातु is treated

- The णिजन्ता-धातु is उभयपदी by default.
- When conjugating, the new धातु is treated like $1^{\text {st }}$ conjugation.
- Any कृत्-प्रत्यय can be added.

6) विग्रहवाक्यम् of this णिच्-ending सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः

- For example, "कुर्वन्तं प्रेरयति इति कारयति/कारयते।", "पइयन्तं प्रेरयति इति दर्रायति/दर्शायते।", etc.
- Note that विग्रहवाक्य for णिच्-ending सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्ति is not commonly seen.

For example, to make a new धातु indicating an action "to make somebody do", णिच् is suffixed to the धातु कृ (to do). The last ॠ, which is इक, takes वृद्दि because of the इत letter ण् of णिच, When ॠ or ॠ becomes अणु, it is mandated to be followed by र्. Thus the वृद्दि substitute for the ऋ of धातु कृ is वृद्दि letter आ followed by र्, together आर्. Then the new धातु becomes कारि. Hence, कृ (to do) + णिच् (causative) $=$ कारि (to make somebody do).

1) कृ + णिच् $A$ सनादि-प्रत्यय णिच् in the sense of causative is suffixed to the धातु कृ (to do). By the addition of the suffix, कृ is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) कृ + इ ण् and च् of णिच् are इत् (indicatory) letters. They are elided.
3) कार् + इ Being णित्-प्रत्यय, णिच् can cause वृद्दि in the अङ्ग. (See Topic IV)
4) कारि Being सनाद्यन्त (that which ends with सनादि-प्रत्यय), this is qualified to be a धातु. The meaning is "to make somebody do".

The conjugation in present tense in active voice will be कारयति (he makes somebody do), कारयतः कारयन्ति,... In imperative in active voice will be कारयतु (may one make somebody do, कारयताम, कारयन्तु,...

1) कारि + लट् To denote an agent of a present action, लट्-पप्यत्य is suffixed to the धातु. By the addition of the suffix, कारि is qualified to be an अङ.
2) कारि + तिप् लट् is replaced by तिङ्--प्रत्यय, a conjugational suffix to make a verb.
3) कारि + ति प् is इत् hence elided.
4) कारि + राप् + ति तिड् can bring another suffix शाप् to the धातु.
5) कारि + अ + ति शू and प् of शाप् are इत, thus elided.
6) कारे + अ + ति The suffix शाप् cause गुण to its अङ्ग. (See Topic IV)
7) कारय् + अ + ति Vowel सन्धि is applicable. By 6.1.78 एचोऽयवायावः। अय् takes place.
8) कारयति This is the final form.

From the new धातु - कारि, कृद्त्त words can also be made. With तृच् (agent) the new प्रातिपदिक is कारयितृ. With रातृ (indicating कर्ता of present action, in other words, present active participle) the new प्रातिपदिक is कारयत् (the one who is making somebody do). With क्त्वा (agent of previous action), the new प्रातिपदिक is कारयित्वा (having made someone do).

Here are more examples of णिच्－ending（णिजन्त）धातुs：

| Original धातु： | New धातु：and विग्रहवाक्यम् | लट／／कर्तरि／III／1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| अधि＋इ（to study） | ＋णिच्＝अध्यापि（to make somebody study，to teach） | अध्यापयति |
| कृ（to do） | ＋णिच्＝कारि（to make somebody do） | कारयति |
| खाद्न（to eat） | ＋णिच्＝खादि（to make somebody eat，to feed） | खादयति |
| गम्（to go） | ＋णिच्＝गमि（to make somebody go） | गमयति |
| ज्ञा（to know） | ＋णिच्＝ज्ञापि（to make somebody know） | ज्ञापयति |
| दृरा（to see） | ＋णिच्＝द⿸丆口श़ा（to make somebody see，to show） | दर्शायति |
| पర्（to study） | ＋णिच्＝पाठि（to make somebody study，to teach） | पाठयति |
| बुध्（to know） | ＋णिच्＝बोधि（to make somebody know，to teach） | बोधयति |
| नि＋युज（to engage） | ＋णिच्＝नियोजि（to make somebody engage，urge） | नियोजयति |
| प्र＋वृत्（to engage） | ＋णिच्＝प्रवर्ति（to make somebody engage，to propel） | प्रवर्तयति |
| श्रु（to hear） | ＋णिच्＝श्रावि（to make somebody hear，to tell） | श्रावयति |
| स्था（to stand） | ＋णिच्＝स्थापि（to make somebody stand，to put） | स्थापयति |
| हन（to injure） | ＋णिच्＝घाति（to make somebody kill） | घातयति |

Exercise：Find णिजन्त धातुs in the following sentences，identify the धातुs and translate the sentences by parsing each word．For विभक्तिs related णिजन्त，see Appendix．

1．सूर्यः सर्वान् विषयान् प्रकाइायति ।
2．वायुः शाखाः चालयति।
3．अहं ज्ञानदीपेन तमः नारायामि।
4．देही न करोति न कारयति।
5．कथं सः पुरुषः कं घातयति।
6．यः इमं परमं गुह्यं श्रावयेत् ब््मसंसदि ।
7．दृष्टन्तः दार्ष्टन्तं ज्ञापयति।
8．ईश्वरः अर्जुनाय विश्वरूपं दर्शायति।
9．सेनयोरुभयोर्मध्ये रथं स्थापय मेऽच्युत।
10．सेनयोरुभयोर्मध्ये स्थापयित्वा रथोत्तमम्।

11．धर्मसंस्थापनार्थाय संभवामि युगे युगे।
12．मयि बुद्दिं निवेराय।
13．न बुद्धिभेदें जनयेत्।
14．रुद्रः सर्वान् रोदयति ।
15．पिता पुत्रं ग्रामं गमयति।
16．गुरुः शिष्यं प्रबोधयति ।
17．आचार्यः रिष्यान् वेद्म् अध्यापयति ।
18．माता ओदनं शिशुना खादयति ।
19．वेदः पुरुषं कर्मणि प्रवर्तयति ।
20．घोरे कर्मणणि मां नियोजयसि ।

## 2. सनन्तः (सन-प्रत्यय ending root)

सन् is one of the सनादि-प्रत्ययs, suffixed to धातु to make a new धातु.
The सन-ending धातु is commonly called सनन्तः (that which ends with सन.)
The following are the 6 things to be known regarding सन् प्रत्यय:

1) In which sense सन is used

- Desiderative (to desire to do ...) सन् denotes the action of desiring

2) Content of सन्

- स

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of सन and their function

- न्- By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्ञ

- द्वित्वम् (reduplication of the धातु) takes place. Details follow.
- No गुण or वृद्धि takes place in the अङ. (Ref. 1.2.8 to 1.2.10)
- When इट्-आगम is attached, स् of सन becomes ष्.

5) How the new धातु is treated

- In conjugating, सनान्त-धातु is treated like धातुs in $1^{\text {st }}$ conjugation.
E.g. 1, जिज्ञासति, जिज्ञासतः, जिज्ञासन्ति, etc.
- Two कृतु-प्रत्ययs are commonly suffixed to सनाद्यन्तधातु. One is "उ" to denote agent, the other is "अ" to denote the action itlsef.
E.g. 2. पिपास (to desire to drink) + उ (agent) = पिपासु (one who desires to drink)
E.g. 3. पिपास (to desire to drink) + अ (action itselg) + आ (feminine suffix to make it femine) $=$ पिपासा (thirst)

6) विग्रहवाक्यम् of this सन--ending सनाद्यन्तधातु-वृत्तिः

- In विग्रहवाक्य, तुमुन् (कृत्-प्रत्यय to make "to infinitive") is used after orininal धातु.
- इच्छति (disires), इच्छु: (agent of desiring), इच्छा (desire), etc. are used as सनन्तधातु is suffixed with तिड्, उ, and अ , respectively.
E.g. 1, पातुम् इच्छति इति पिपासति। He desires to drink is said पिपासति.
E.g. 2, पातुम् इच्छुः पिपासुः। The one who wants to drink is पिपासुः E.g. 3, पातुम् इच्छा पिपासा। The desire to drink is पिपासा.

For example, to make a new धातु indicating an action "to desire to drink", सन् is suffixed to the धातु पा (to drink). After the modifications shown below, the new धातु becomes पिपास.

1) पा + सन् $A$ सनादि-प्रत्यय सन् is suffixed to the धातु पा (to drink).

By the addition of the suffix, पा is qualified to be an अङ्ग.
2) पा + स न् of सन् is इत् thus elided.
3) पा + पा + स When सन-प्रत्यय is suffixed, धातु undergoes द्वित्वम् (reduplication).
4) पि + पा + स The first one of the two undergoes further modifications.
5) पिपास This is the final form. Being सनाद्यन्त, this is qualified to be a धातु.

From the new सनाद्यन्त-धातु, तिङन्त्त (verbs) can be made by suffixing तिङ्-प्रत्ययs. The conjugation of the धातु in present tense in active voice will be पिपासति (he desires to drink, he is thirsty), पिपासतः, पिपासन्ति ...

1) पिपास + लट् To conjugate in present tense, लट् is suffixed.
2) पिपास + तिप् In the place of लकार, तिड्. is the substitute.
3) पिपास + शाप् + ति In लट्, गणविकरण शाप् प्रत्यय is suffixed to धातु.
4) पिपासति After removing इतs, and sandhi, this is the last form.

कृत--पत्यय "उ" denotes the agent of सनाद्यन्तधातु and makes a new प्रातिपदिक. For example, पिपास (to desire to drink) + उ (agent) makes पिपासु (one who is thirsty), जिज्ञास (to desire to know) + उ (agent) makes जिज्ञासु (one who wants to know). The new प्रातिपदिक declines as उending, like गुरु.

Another कृत्-पत्यय is "अ", which makes a new आ-ending feminine प्रातिपदिक denoting the action itself. For example, from the new सनाद्यन्तधातु पिपास (to desire to drink), by suffixing अ and feminine suffix टाप् (आ), a new प्रातिपदिक पिपासा (thirst) is made. Note that feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is suffixed to certain अ-ending feminine word without adding any extra meaning. Similarly, जिज्ञासा (desire to know) is made by suffixing अ and feminine suffix टाप् (आ) to a सनाद्यन्तधातु जिज्ञास (to desire to know).

## द्वित्वम् (Reduplication)

$\square$ धातुs undergo reduplication, द्वित्व, when the धातुs are suffixed with certain प्रत्ययs such as:

- लिट् (verbal suffix in perfect past tense)
- सन् (desiderative)
- यङ् (intensive)
- श्षु (conjugational suffix for $3^{\text {rd }}$ conjugation)
- other specific instances
$\square$ When and how the धातुs should be reduplicated are described from Pāṇini-sūtra 6.1.1 onwards.
$\square$ After reduplicating a धातु, in other words after repeating a धातु twice, the first one of the two is called "अभ्यास".
$\square$ The अभ्यास undergoes a process called "अभ्यास-कार्य", which is described from Pāṇini-sūtra 7.4.58 onwards.
$\square$ Here is a basic outline of the process of अभ्यास:
a) The vowel becomes हस्व (short). (7.4.59 हस्वः।)
b) Only the initial consonant remains. Any other consonants are elided. (7.4.60 हलादिः शोषः।)
c) कवर्ग and ह् become their corresponding चवर्ग letters. (7.4.62 कुहोश्शुः।)
d) ऋ becomes अ. (7.4.66 उरत।)
e) Only when सन follows, a short अ becomes इ. (7.4.79 सन्यतः।)
f) झल् should become जरा (class 3) or चर् (class 1). (8.4.54 अभ्यासे चर्च।)

For example:

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\text { ज्ञा + ज्ञा + सन् } & \text { दृरा + दृरा + सन् } & \text { हा + हा + सन् } & \text { धातुs are reduplicated by सन्. } \\
\text { ज्ञ + ज्ञा + सन् } & & \text { ह + हा + सन् } & \text { by a) } 7.4 .59 \text { ह्स्वः। } \\
\text { ज + ज्ञा + सन् } & \text { द + दृरा + सन् } & & \text { by b) } 7.4 .60 \text { हलादिः शोषः। } \\
& \text { झ + हा + सन् } & \text { by c) 7.4.62 कुहोश्चुः। } \\
& \text { द + दृशा + सन् } & & \text { by d) 7.4.66 उरत्। } \\
\text { जि + ज्ञा + सन् } & \text { दि + कृ + सन् } & \text { झि + हा + सन् } & \text { by e) } 7.4 .79 \text { सन्यतः। } \\
& & \text { जि + हा + सन् } & \text { by e) } 8.4 .54 \text { अभ्यासे चर्च। }
\end{array}
$$

Here are more examples of सन--ending (सनन्त) धातुs:

| Original धातु: | New धातु: | Example of विग्रहवाक्यम् |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| आप् (to obtain) | + सन् = ईप्स (to desire to obtain) | आपुमु इच्छति ईप्सति । |
| कृ (to do) | + सन् = चिकीर्ष (to desire to do) | कर्तुम् इच्छु: चिकीर्षुः। |
| ख्या (to state) | + सन् = चिख्यास (to desire to state) | ख्यातुम् इच्छति चिख्यासति। |
| गम (to go) | + सन् = जिगमिष (to desire to go) | गन्तुम् इच्छति जिगमिषति । |
| अनु + ग्रह् (to bless) | + सन = अनुजिघृक्ष (to desire to bless) | अनुगृहीतुम् इच्छु: अनुजिघृ,्षुः। |
| जि (to conquer) | + सन् = जिगीष (to desire to conquer) | जेतुमू इच्छु: जिगीषु: । |
| जीव् (to live) | + सन् = जिजीविष (to desire to live) | जीवितुमू इच्छति जिजीविषति। |
| ज्ञा (to know) | + सन् = जिञ्ञास (to desire to know) | ज्ञातुम् इच्छु: जिज्ञासुः। |
| त̨ (to cross) | + सन् = तितीर्ष (to desire to cross) | तरितुमू इच्छाति तितीर्षति। |
| उप + दिशा (to teach) | + सन = उपदिदिक्ष (to desire to teach) | उपदेष्टुम् इच्छति उपदिदिक्षति । |
| दृरा (to see) | + सन = दिद्कक्ष (to desire to see) | द्रष्टुम इच्छति दिदृक्षति । |
| ध्यै (to meditate) | + सन् = दिध्यास (to desire to meditate) | ध्यातुम इच्छति दिध्यासति । |
| पర् (to study) | + सन् = पिपठिष (to desire to study) | पठितुम इच्छति पिपठिषति । |
| पा (to drink) | + सन = पिपास (to desire to drink) | पातुम इच्छा पिपासा। |
| बुध् (to know) | + सन् = बुभुत्स (to desire to know) | बोद्युम इच्छति बुभुत्सति। |
| भुज (to enjoy) | + सन् $=$ बुभुक्ष (to desire to enjoy) | भोक्तुम् इच्छा बुभुक्षा। |
| मुच् (to liberate) | + सन् $=$ मुमुक्ष (to desire to liberate) | मोक्रुम इच्छा मुमुक्षा। |
| आ + रुह् (to climb) | + सन् $=$ आरुरुक्ष (to desire to climb) | आरोढुम् इच्छु: आरुरुक्षु: |
| वच् (to speak) | + सन् = विवक्ष (to desire to speak) | वक्रुम्इच्छा विवक्षा। |
| विद्य (to know) | + सन् = विविदिष (to desire to know) | वेदितुम् इच्छा विविदिषा। |
| श ${ }_{\text {人 }}$ (to hear) | + सन् $=$ शुश्रूष (to desire to hear) | श्रोतुमू इच्छा शुश्रूषा। |
| हा (to give up) | + सन = जिहास (to desire to give up) | हातुम् इच्छा जिहासा। |
| परि + पालू + गिच् <br> (to protect) | + सन् = परिपिपालयिष (to desire to protect) | परिपालयितुम् इच्छा परिपिपालयिषा। |
| उद्ञ + धृ + णिच् <br> (to save) | + सन् = उद्दिधारयिष (to desire to save) | उद्धारयितुम् इच्छा उद्दिधारयिषा। |

Examples from रास्त्राणि

धार्तराष्ट्रस्य दुर्बुद्देयुद्दे प्रियचिकीर्षवः॥ गी० १-२३॥
कुर्याद्विद्वांस्तथासक्तश्चिकीर्षुर्लोकसंग्रहम्॥ गी० ३-२५॥
आरुरुक्षोर्मुनेन्योंगं कर्म कारणमुच्चते॥ गी० ६-३॥

आर्तो जिज्ञासुरर्थार्थी ज्ञानी च भरतर्षभ॥ गी० ७-१६॥ यानेव हत्वा न जिजीविषामः ॥गी० २-६॥

आत्मा वा अरे ... निद्दिध्यासितव्यः ॥बृ० २.४.५॥

जिज्ञासुरपि योगस्य शाब्दब्नह्मातिवर्तते॥ गी० ६-8४॥
तमेतं वेदानुवचनेन ब्राह्मणा विविदिषन्ति यज्ञेन दानेन तपसा अनाइाकेन...॥ बृ० ४.४.२२ ॥
उभे तीर्त्वाऽरानायापिपासे इोकातिगो मोदते स्वर्गलोके॥ क० १.१.१२॥

## Exercise 1:

Give the three types of विग्रह (explanatory sentences) of the सनन्त-धातु examples.

## Exercise 2:

Attempt to figure out अभ्यासकार्य (changes in अभ्यास), as show in the example below, of the following सनन्त-धातुs:

1. चिख्यास
2. जिज्ञास
3. बुभुत्स
4. विवक्ष
5. जिगमिष
6. पिपठिष
7. बुभुक्ष
8. विविदिष
9. जिजीविष
10. पिपास
11. मुमुक्ष
12. जिहास

- धातु is ख्या (2P) to say

1) ख्या + सन् सन is suffixed.
2) ख्या + ख्या + सन् Because of the सन, the धातु is reduplicated.
3) ख्य + ख्या + सन् The vowel becomes हस्व (short). (7.4.59 हस्वः।)
4) ख + र्या + सन् Only the first consonant of अभ्यास remains. (7.4.60 हलाद्दिः शोषः।)
5) खि + र्या + सन् Only when सन् follows, a short अ becomes इ. (7.4.79 सन्यतः।)
6) चि + ख्या + सन् झल् should become जरा (class 3 ) or चर् (class 1 ). (8.4.54 अभ्यासे चर्च।)
7) चिख्यास The final form

## Exercise 3:

Give विग्रहवाक्य of the following words derived from सनन्दधातु in the format given below.

1. चिकीर्षोः
2. जिज्ञासोः
3. पिपासायै
4. आरुरुक्षोः
5. व्याचिख्यासायाः
6. तितीर्षुणा
7. बुभुत्सवे
8. विवक्षायाम्
9. जिगमिषूणाम्
10. पिपठिषून
11. बुभुक्षुषु
12. विविदिषुणा
13. जिजीविषया
14. परिपिपालयिषोः
15. मुमुक्षवे
16. शुश्रूषायाः
17. अनुजिघृक्षया
18. पिपासया
19. मुमुक्षूणाम्
20. जिहासया

Example answer to 1 :
कर्तुम् इच्छु: चिकीर्षु: तस्मात/तस्य चिकीर्षोः ।

Exercise 4: Find सनन्त-धातुs in the following sentences, identify the धातुs, give विग्रहवाक्य for सनाद्यन्तवृत्ति, and translate the sentences by parsing each word.

1. एतत् फलं मया ईप्स्यते ।
2. सेवां चिकीर्षवः आगच्छन्ति ।
3. इमानि शास्त्राणि मया व्याचिख्यास्यन्ते।
4. ते जनाः स्वर्गं जिगमिषन्ति।
5. लोकान् अनुजिघृक्षुः ईश्वरः।
6. सः युद्दे जिगीषति।
7. पापं कृत्वा वयं न जिजीविषामः।
8. लोकान् परीक्ष्य सः आत्मनः तत्त्वं जिज्ञासति।
9. संसारं तितीर्षोः उपायः इास्त्रे उपदिइयते।
10. सः उपदेरास्य अर्थं निद्धिध्यासति ।
11. शिष्याः वेदान् गुरोः पिपठिषन्ति ।
12. देवद्तस्य पिपासा अस्ति ।
13. एके बुभुत्सन्ति ।
14. अन्ये बुभुक्षन्ति।
15. आरुरुक्षोः योगः कर्म उच्यते ।
16. ते तत्त्वं विविदिषन्ति।
17. देवद्त्तः शुश्रूषां करोति।
18. जिहासया त्यजति।
19. बुभुत्सया पृच्छति।
20. अनुजिघृक्षया भगवान् उपदिशाति।

# Topic VII - Kṛdanta - कृद्तन् 

## Topic VII

## कृदन्तम्

## Kṛdanta

## कृत्-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to a root to make a new nominal base)

$\square$ कृत-प्रत्ययs are the suffixes added to a धातु (root) to make a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base).
धातुः + कृत--प्रत्ययः = प्रातिपदिकम्
$\square$ In other words, nominalization of धातु is done by suffixing कृत्-प्रत्यय. Or, by suffixing कृत्-प्रत्यय, धातु gets nominalised. (*1)
$\square$ There are more than 100 कृत्-प्रत्ययs. They are found in Pāṇini-sūtras 3.1.93 to 3.4.76.
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिक and the declined form (सुबन्त) of that प्रातिपदिक are called कृदन्तम् (verbal derivative nouns, or nominalised root).
$\square$ कृत्-प्रत्ययs denote कारक (agent, object, etc.) or/and भाव (action itself) of the धातु.
$\square$ Some कृत्-प्रत्ययs can also express additional sense such as tense of the action.
*1: Pāṇini-sūtra 3.1.91 declares that from there onward and up to the end of the $3{ }^{\text {rd }}$ chapter, all the प्रत्ययs enjoined are to be suffixed to धातु. Pānini-sūtra 3.1.93 teaches that all the प्रत्ययs other than the 18 तिङ्-प्रत्ययs are कृत्-प्रत्यय. Then Pānini-sūtra 1.2.46 defines that कृत्-प्रत्यय-ending words are qualified to be called प्रातिपदिकम.
Topic VII - Kṛdanta - कृद्तन्तम

## i. Basic sense of कृत-पप्यत्यय

A कृत--पत्यय indicates/denotes any one of कारक (कर्ता, कर्म, करणम, etc.) or भाव, the meaning of the धातु itself.
$\square$ Aधातु indicates action.
$\square \mathrm{A}$ धातु and a कृत्-प्रत्यय meet together to make a single प्रातिपदिक.
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिक indicates/denotes the कारक of the action or भाव of the action.
For example:
ज्ञा (to know) + तृच् (agent, ~er) = ज्ञातृ (agent of knowing, knower)

- ज्ञा is a धातु indicating the action of knowing.
- तृच् is a कृत्-प्रत्यय indicating the agent (कर्ता).
- The धातु and कृत-प्रत्यय make a new प्रातिपदिक indicating the agent of knowing.
- This type of derivation is called कर्तरि व्युत्पत्तिः (derivation in the sense of agent).

लोक् (to experience) + घज् (object, $\sim \mathrm{ed})=$ लोक (object of experience, experienced)

- लोक् is a धातु indicating the action of experience.
- घज् is a कृत्-प्रत्यय indicating the object (कर्म).
- The धातु and कृत्-पत्यय make a new प्रातिपदिक indicating the object of experience.
- This type of derivation is called कर्मणि व्युत्पत्तिः (derivation in the sense of object). All कृत्-प्रत्ययs are used in the sense of कारक and/or भाव. Thus कारक and भाव are called "the basic sense" in this book.


## Topic VII - Kṛdanta - कृदन्तम्

## ii. Additional sense of कुत-प्रत्यय

On top of the basic sense, some कृत्-प्रत्ययs can indicate time of the action, necessity of action, and so on. These are called "additional sense".

For example:
ज्ञा (to know) + क्तवतुँ (agent, $\sim \mathrm{er})+$ (of the past action) $=$ ज्ञातवत् (one who knew)

- ज्ञा is a धातु indicating the action of knowing.
- क्तवतुँ is a कृत-प्रत्यय indicating the agent of the action in the past.
- The धातु and कृत-प्रत्यय makes a new प्रातिपदिक indicating the agent of knowing, which happened in the past.

गम् $($ to reach $)+$ तव्य $($ object, $\sim \mathrm{ed})+($ necessity $)=$ गन्तव्य $($ that which should be reached $)$

- गम् is a धातु indicating the action of going.
- तव्य is a कृत्-प्रत्यय indicating the object of the action which is necessary.
- The धातु and कृत्-प्रत्यय makes a new प्रातिपदिक indicating the object of reaching, which should be done.
$\square$ When studying कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known:

1) What the कृत्-पत्यय denotes
2) Content of the कृत्-प्रत्यय
3) इत् letters of the कृत्-प्रत्यय and their functions
4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ
5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक
6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक
7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

In this book, each कृत्-प्रत्यय will be introduced with these 7 aspects.
$\square$ In this book, कृत्-प्रत्ययs are introduced in the order of अष्टध्यायी (Pāṇini-sūtra).

## 1. कुत्याः in कर्मणि \& भावे

$\square$ There are 6 कृत्-प्रत्ययs together called कृत्याः.
$\square$ These 6 कृत्याः प्रत्ययs are यते, क्यपे, णयत, तव्यत, तव्य, अनीयर्.
$\square$ कृत्याः प्रत्ययs are enjoined in the section of Pāṇini-sūtra from 3.1.95 to 3.1.132.
$\square$ कृत्य is a subcategory of कृत्-पत्ययs.
$\square$ All कृत्याः प्रत्ययs are used in the same sense.

- Basic meaning: कर्म (object) and also भाव (meaning of the धातु itself)
- Additional meanings: the sense of direction, fitness, necessity, capacity, etc.
$\square$ The meanings of all of the six कृत्य-ending are:
Object which shold be done, object which is fit be done, object which is necessarily to be done, object which is possible to be done;

Action which shold be done, action which is fit be done, action which is necessarily to be done, action which is possible to be done;

In the examples, only one meaning is written as a sample to save space.
After removal of इत letters, the contents of the कृत्याः are 3 types:
a. यत, क्यप, ण्यत् (the content is "य")
b. तव्यत, तव्य (the content is "तव्य")
c. अनीयर् (the content is "अनीय")
$\square$ इत् letters of प्रत्यय determine how अङ should be modified. For example:
a. ज्ञा (to know) + यत् = ज्ञेय (When यत् is suffixed, आ of the धातु is modified into ए.) स्तु (to praise) + क्यप् = स्तुत्य (तुक-आगम is added because क्यप् is पित.) कृ (to do) + णयत् = कार्य (Because गयत् is णित, वृद्दि takes place in अङ्.)
b. कृ (to do) + तव्य $=$ कर्तव्य
c. कृ (to do) + अनीय $=$ करणीय
$\square$ Among these कृत्याः suffixes, तव्यतु, तव्य, अनीयर् can be suffixed to any धातु.
$\square$ Among यत, क्यप, and णयत, the characteristics of the धातु determines which one of them can be suffixed.

Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, these are the 7 common things to be known about कृत्याः (यत, क्यप, ण्यत, तव्यत, तव्य, अनीयऱ):

1) What कृत्याः denote:

- कर्म (object) and also भाव (meaning of the धातु itself)
- The sense of direction, fitness, necessity, or capacity, are added to the action.

2) Content of कृत्या:

- य for यत, क्यप, and ग्यत्
- तव्य for तव्यत् and तव्य
- अनीय for अनीयर्

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of कृत्याः and their function

- Individually seen in the following sections

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- गुण or वृद्धि can take place (See Topic IV.)

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक declines in 3 लिङ्यs. The लिझ्झ is determined by the लिझ्भ of a noun, which the कृत्य-ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In पुँद्लिझ and नपुंसकलिङ्ध, it declines as अ-ending.
- In स्स्रिलिङ, a feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added and it declines as आ-ending.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- As the explanation for one कृत्य-प्रत्यय, another कृत्य-प्रत्यय is generally used. E.g., कर्तव्यम् for करणीयम, दर्शानीयः for दृइयः, etc.
- To show the meaning of fitness, योग्य with तुमुन-ending word may be used. E.g., दातुं योग्यम् for देयम. द्रहुष्टुं योग्यः दर्शानीयः, etc.
- To show the meaning of capacity, शाक्य with तुमुन--ending word may be used. E.g., त्यक्तुं राक्यः त्यक्तव्यः, वक्तुं राक्यं वचनीयम, etc.


## a. यत, क्यप, णयत् (the content is " $य$ ")

## इत् (indicatory) letters of यत, क्यप, ण्यत् and their function

- For यत्
- त् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् । For intonation.
- For क्यप्
- क् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्विते। When कित्-प्रत्यय follows, गुण and वृद्दि are prohibited in अङ्ग. (See Topic IV)
- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् । When पित्-प्रत्यय which is कृत्-प्रत्यय follows a धातु which ends with a short vowel, त् is attached at the end of the धातु. (6.1.71 ह्रस्वस्य पिति कृति तुक् ।) - For गयत्
- ण् - By 1.3.7 चुटू । ण् can cause वृद्दि. (See Topic IV)
- त् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्। For intonation.

Among यत, क्यप, and ण्यत, the characteristics of the धातु determines which one of them can be suffixed. See the next page for examples.

- यत् is suffixed to:
- अच-ending धातु. (3.1.97 अचो यत्। ~ प्रत्ययः परश्च धातोः )
- पु-ending धातुs which has short अ in penultimate take यत् (3.1.98 पोरदुपधात्। ~ यत्) (अपवाद to 3.1.124)
- other specific instances
- For क्यप्
- Some specific धातुs take क्यप् (3.1.109 एतिस्तुरास्वृद्वजुषः क्यप् ।)
- For ग्यत्
- ऋत-ending धातुs take गयत् (3.1.124 ॠहलोण्यत् ।) (अपवाद of 3.1.97)
- हल्-ending धातुs take णयत् (3.1.124 ऋहलोणर्यत् ।)
- other specific instances

Here are some examples of यत् ending words:
धातु:
New प्रातिपदिकम with one of the possible meanings

## अच-ending धातुs take यति.

| जि $(1 \mathrm{P})$ to conquer | + यत् $=$ | जेय (that which should be conquered) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| नी $(1 \mathrm{U})$ to lead | + यत् $=$ | नेय (that which should be led) |

* आ at the end becomes ई, then गुण, when followed by यत,

| ज्ञा (9P) to know | + यत् $=$ | ज्ञेय (that which should be known) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| दा (3U) to give | + यत् $=$ | देय (that which should be given) |
| प + मा( 2 P ) to know | + यत् $=$ | प्रमेय (that which should be known) |
| अनु + स्था (1P) to practise | + यत् $=$ | अनुष्ठेय (that which should be practised) |
| अभि + धा (3U) to name | + यत् $=$ | अभिधेय (that which should be named) |
| हा (3P) to abandon | + यत् $=$ | हेय (that which should be abandoned) |

## * णिजन्तधातु drops the last इ of णिच, सनन्तधातु drops the last अ of सन,

प्रतिपादि to unfold $\quad+$ यत् $=\quad$ प्रतिपाद्य (that which should be unfolded)
जिज्ञास to desire to know + यत् = जिज्ञास्य (that which should be desired to be known)

## * Short अ in penultimate and पु-ending धातुs take यत्.

| लम् $(1 \mathrm{~A})$ to gain | + यत् $=$ | लम्य (that which should be gained) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| गम् (1P) to reach | + यत् $=$ | गम्य (that which should be reached) |

To make a word denoting an object which should be given:

1) दा + यत् यत, one of the कृत्याः प्रत्ययs is suffixed to दा (to give) because यत् can be suffixed to an आ-ending धातु in this sense.

By the addition of the suffix, दा is qualified to be an अङ्ग.
2) दा + य त् of यत् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) दी + य When आ ending धातु is suffixed by यत, the आ is replaced by ई.
4) दे + य The ई, a part of the धातु, takes गुण (See Topic IV).
5) देय यत् is one of the कृत्याः प्रत्ययs, and कृत्यs are subset of कृत्र्पत्ययs.

Thus देय is a कृदन्त (that which ends with कृत्-प्रत्यय).
Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.
In the same manner, ज्ञेय (ज्ञा to know), अभिधेय (अभि + धा to designate), etc. are made.

Here are some examples of क्यप् ending words:
धातु:
New प्रातिपदिकम with one of the possible meanings

## Some specific धातुs take क्यप.

| स्तु $(2 \mathrm{P})$ to praise | + क्यप् $=$ | स्तुत्य (that which should be praised) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| शास् $(2 \mathrm{P})$ to teach | + क्यप् $=$ | शिाष्य (one who is fit to be taught) |
| दृशा (1P) to see | + क्यप् $=$ | दृरय (that which should be seen) |
| शाक् (5P) to be possible | + क्यप् $=$ | शाक्य (that which should be possible to be ...ed) |
| कृ $(8 \mathrm{U})$ to do | + क्यप् $=$ | कृत्य (that which should be done) |

* कृ धातु can take both क्यप् and ण्यत्.

To make a word denoting an object which should be praised:

1) स्तु + क्यप् क्यप, one of the कृत्याः प्रत्ययs is suffixed to स्तु (to praise) because क्यप् can be suffixed to certain धातुs such as स्तु, शास, etc.

By the addition of the suffix, स्तु is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) स्तु + य क् and प् of क्यप् are इत् letters and hence elided. कित् प्रत्यय does not cause गुण in the अङ.
3) स्तु + त् + य Because स्तु ends with a हस्व (short vowel), and क्यप् is पित् (one whose इत् is प) as well as कृत--पत्यय, by 6.1.71 ह्हस्वस्य पिति कृति तुक।, तुकआगम (the content is त) is attached at the end of the धातु.
4) स्तुत्य Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम.

In the same manner, शिष्य (शास् to teach), दृरय (दृरा to see), etc. are made.

Here are some examples of ग्यत् ending words:
धातु:
New प्रातिपदिकम with one of the possible meanings

## ॠत-ending धातुs take गयत.

$\begin{array}{lll}\text { कृ (8U) to do } & + \text { गयत् }= & \text { कार्य (that which should be done) } \\ \text { हृ (1U) to take away } & + \text { गयत् }= & \text { हार्य (that which should be taken away) }\end{array}$

* हलु-ending धातुs take गयति.

साध् (5P) to accomplish + गयत् $=$ साध्य (that which should be accomplished)
वच् $(2 \mathrm{P})$ to speak + गयत् $=\quad$ वाच्य्य (that which should be spoken)
वच् (2P) to speak + ग्यत् $=$ वाक्य (sentence)
दह् (1P) to burn $\quad+$ गयत् $=$ दाह्य (that which should be burnt)
उद्न + पद्न (4A) to produce + गयत् = उत्पाद्य (that which should be produced)
विद्न (2P) to know + ग्यत् = वेद्य (that which should be known)

| लिह् (2P) to lick | + गयत् $=$ | लेह्य (that which should be licked) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| वि + शिष् (7P) to qualify | + गयत् = | विशोष्य (that which should be qualified) |
| शुच् (1P) to lament | + गयत् $=$ | शोच्य (that which one should be lamented) |
| युज् (7U) to be fit | + गयत् $=$ | योग्य (that which is fit) |
| पूज् (1U) to worship | + गयत् $=$ | पूज्य (that which should be worshiped) |
| आप् (5P) to pervade | + गयत् $=$ | आप्य (that which should be pervaded) |
| उप + आस् (2A) to meditate | + गयत् $=$ | उपास्य (that which should be meditated) |

To make a word denoting an object which should be done:

1) कृ + णयत् णयत, one of the कृत्याः प्रत्ययs is suffixed to कृ (to do) because गयत् can be suffixed to ॠ-ending and हल्-ending धातुs in this sense.

By the addition of the suffix, कृ is qualified to be an अङ.
2) कृ + य ण् and त् of ण्यत् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) कार् + य Being a णित, णयत् causes वृद्दि in the अङ्न.
4) कार्य Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

In the same manner, हार्य (हृ to take away), उत्पाद्य (उद्न + पद् to produce), etc. are made.

## b. तव्यत, तव्य (the content is "तव्य")

$\square$ The difference between तव्यत् and तव्य is only intonation.

- त् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् । For intonation.
$\square$ Both प्रत्ययs are suffixed to any धातु as long as the form is seen in the शास्त्र.

For example, to make a word whose meaning is an object which has to be done:

1) कृ + तव्य तव्यत् or तव्य is suffixed to कृ (to do).
By the addition of the suffix, कृ is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) कर् + तव्य गुण takes place in the अङ. (See Topic IV)
3) कर्तव्य Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

## c. अनीयर (the content is "अनीय")

इत् (indicatory) letter of अनीयर् and its function

- र् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् । For intonation.

अनीयर् is suffixed to any धातु as long as the form is seen in the शास्त्र.

For example, to make a word whose meaning is an object which has to be done:

1) कृ + अनीयर् अनीयर्, one of the कृत्याः प्रत्ययs is suffixed to कृ (to do). By the addition of the suffix, कृ is qualified to be an अङ.
2) कृ + अनीय र् of अनीयर् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) कर् + अनीय गुण takes place in the अङ्. (See Topic IV)
4) करणीय णत्व-सन्धि takes place.
5) करणीय Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Here are more examples of तव्यत, तव्य and अनीयर् ending words which are seen often:
धातुः

| गम् (1P) to go | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | गन्तव्य/गमनीय (object to be reached) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| चिन्त् (10U) to think | + अनीयर् = | चिन्तनीय (object to be considered) |
| ज्ञा (9P) to know | + तव्य = | ज्ञातव्य (that which should be known) |
| त्यज (1P) to give up | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | त्यक्तव्य/त्यजनीय (object to be given up) |
| दा (3U) to give | + तब्य = | दातव्य (object to be given) |
| दृरू (1P) to see | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | द्रष्टव्य/दर्शानीय (object to be seen) |
| श्रु (1P) to hear | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | श्रोतव्य/श्रवणीय (object to be heard) |
| मन् (4A) to think | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | मन्तव्य/मननीय (object to be thought) |
| नि + दिध्यास to contemplate | + तव्य = | निदिध्यासितव्य (object to be contemplated) |
| वि + जिज्ञास to desire to know | $w+$ तव्य $=$ | विजिज्ञासितव्य (object of desire to know) |
| बुध् (1P) to know | + तव्य = | बोद्धव्य (object to be known) |
| भुज् (7U) to experience | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | भोक्तव्य/भोजनीय (object to be experienced) |
| आ + रभ् (1A) to start | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | आरब्घव्य/आरम्भनीय (object to be started) |
| रम (1A) to rejoice at | + अनीयर् = | रमणीय (object to be rejoiced at) |
| लभ् (1A) to obtain | + तब्य $=$ | लब्धव्य (object to be obtained) |
| वच् (2P) to speak | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | वक्तव्य/वचनीय (that which is to be said) |
| विद्न (2P) to know | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | वेदितव्य/वेदनीय (that which is to be known) |
| सेव् ( 1 A ) to serve | + तव्य = | सेवितव्य (that which is to be served) |
| स्मृ (1P) to remember | + अनीयर् = | स्मरणीय (object to be remembered) |
| हन (2P) to injure | + तव्य/ अनीयर् = | हन्तव्य/हननीय (object to be injured) |

Examples from शास्त्र :
ब्है्मैवेन गन्तव्यम्। (गी० ४.२४)
आत्मा वा अरे द्रष्टव्यः श्रोतव्यः मन्तव्यः निदिध्यासितव्यः । (बृ० २.४.५)
कर्मणो ह्यपि बोद्वव्यं बोद्वव्यं च विकर्मणः। (गी० ४.३७)

## Exercise 1:

Try to identify the धातु and प्रत्यय of the following कृत्य-ending कृद्त nouns.
From the धातु and the gender, discuss what that nouns can qualify and in what sense, and try to make विग्रहवाक्य accordingly.

1. कार्यम्
2. उपास्यम्
3. अनुष्ठेयम्
4. विजिज्ञास्यम्
5. करणीयम्
6. हेयम्
7. अनुद्रप्टव्यः
8. निदिध्यास्यम्
9. दृइयम्
10. उपादेयम्
11. जिज्ञासितव्यम्
12. शिाष्याः
13. अभिधेयम्
14. निर्वचनीयम्

Example answer to 1 :
कार्यम् is made of कृ (to do) and गयत्. Since it is in neuter gender, it can be qualifying a कर्म.

Exercise 2: Find कृत्यान्त words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. इदें कर्म कर्तव्यं मया।
2. अत्र विषये किं वक्तव्यम्।
3. द्वे विद्ये वेदितव्ये भवतः।
4. एतत् कार्यमेव ।
5. कर्तुं राक्यम् अकर्तुं राक्यं कर्म।
6. व्याख्येयः ग्रन्थः।
7. इमानि उपास्यानि रूपाणि सन्ति।
8. अस्माकम् सेवितव्याय आचार्याय अस्माभिः किं करणीयम्।
9. आचार्यः शिष्येम्यः ज्ञेयं बह्म उपदिशाति ।
10. योगिनः कर्तव्येन कर्मणा ईश्वरम् अर्चन्ति।

Note that कर्ता of action in कृत्य-ending word takes $3^{\text {rd }}$ case or $6^{\text {th }}$ case. Because कृत्य-प्रत्यय denotes कर्म and भावे, just as तिङ्-प्रत्यय denotes कर्म and भाव् in कर्मणि प्रयोग and भावे प्रयोग, an undenoted कर्ता is expressed in तृतीया विभक्तिः (कर्तरि तृतीया). Optionally, that कर्ता is expressed in षष्ठी विभक्तिः (Ref. 2.3.71).
E.g., देवद्त्तेन गजः दृइयते । तिङ्-प्पत्यय denotes कर्म and undenoted कर्ता is in तृतीया विभक्ति.
देवदत्तेन/देवद्त्तस्य गजः द्रष्टव्यः । कृत्य-प्रत्यय denotes कर्म and undenoted कर्ता is in तृतीया विभक्ति, or optionally षष्ठी विभक्ति.

## Topic VII - Kṛdanta - कृद्त्तम्

## 2. कृत-प्रत्ययs in कर्तरि, that denote कर्ता (agent)

$\square$ To make a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base) which denotes a doer/agent of a given action, the following कृतु-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a धातु indicating that action.
a. तृच्
b. णवुल्
c. किवप्
d. क्त/क्तवतुँ denote the agent of the past action. Note that क्त can denote both कर्ता and कर्म. (See under Topic VII 3. निष्ठा)
e. रातृ/रानच् denote the agent of the present action. Note that शानच् can denote both कर्ता and कर्म. (See under Topic VII 4. इातृ/रानच)
f. क्त्वा/ल्यप् denote the agent of the previous action. (See under Topic VII 6 क्त्वा/ल्यप)
$\square$ For example, to make a word whose meaning is "a doer" or "agent of doing", those कृत्-प्रत्ययs listed above are suffixed to the धातु कृ (to do). The following are the results of adding the above कृत--प्रत्ययs.
a. कृ + तृच् = कर्तृ (doer/one who does/agent of doing)
b. कृ + णुल्ल् $=$ कारक (doer/one who does/agent of doing)
c. कृ + क्विप् = कृत् (doer/one who does/agent of doing)
d. गम् + क्त = गत (one who has gone)

कृ + क्तवतुँ = कृतवत् (doer in past/one who has done/agent of doing in past)
e. कृ + शातृ = कुर्वत् (doer at present/one who is doing/agent of doing at present)

कृ + शानच् = कुर्वाण (doer at present/one who is doing/agent of doing at present)
f. कृ + क्त्वा = कृत्वा (having done/after doing)

वि + कृ + ल्यप् = विकृत्य (having modified/after modifying)
$\square$ Most of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs which denote कर्ता are enjoined by Pāṇini-sūtras in the section from 3.1.133 to 3.2.83.
$\square$ By default, all कृत्-प्रत्ययs are used in the sense of agent (कर्तरि) by 3.4.67 कर्तरि कृत् ।

## a. तुच

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs the following 7 things are to be known regarding "तृच":

1) What तृच् denotes:

- कर्ता (agent)

2) Content of तृच्-प्रत्यय

- तृ

3) इत् (indicatory) letter of तृच् and its function

- च् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- Being आर्धधातुक and वल्-beginning प्रत्यय, तृच् can take इट्-आगम (See Topic V)
- गुण can take place in अङ्ञ (See Topic IV)

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक can decline in 3 लिझ्झs.
- The लिझ्झ is determined by the लिझ्झ of the noun, which the तृच-ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In पुँन्लिझ and नपुंसकलिङ्झ, it declines as तृजन्त (that which ends with तृच). (See Volume 1 "ऋ-ending masculine" for पुँल्戶िए্
- In स्त्रीलिङ, a feminine suffix ङीप् (ई) is added and it declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी. (See Volume 1"ई-ending feminine" for स्रीलिङ)

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- तिङन्त्त in कर्तरि-प्रयोग can be used. For example, "करोति इति कर्ता।", "पइयति इति द्रष्टा।", etc.

The तृच-ending word is commonly called तृजन्त (that which ends with तृच.)

For example, to make a word whose meaning is a knower, an agent of knowing:

1) ज्ञा + तृच् A कृत-प्रत्यय तृच् ( $\sim e r$ ) is suffixed to the धातु ज्ञा (to know).

By the addition of the suffix, ज्ञा is qualified to be an अङ.
2) ज्ञा + तृ च् of तृच् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) ज्ञातृ Being कृदन्त (that which ends with कृत-प्रत्यय), this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

The विग्रहवाक्य will be like "जानाति इति ज्ञाता।". The declension of this word will be ज्ञाता, ज्ञातारौ, ज्ञातारः,.. in पुँल्लिझ, and ज्ञात्री, ज्ञात्र्यो, ज्ञात्य्यः, $\ldots$ in स्रिलिङ

Here are more examples of तृच-ending (तृजन्त) words:

| धातुः |  | New प्रातिपदिकम, | विग्रहवाक्यम, |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| कृ (8U) to do | + तृच् $=$ | कर्तृ (doer) | करोति इति कर्ता। |
| भू (1P) to be | + तृच् $=$ | भवितृ (one who becomes) | भवति इति भविता। |
| गम् (1P) to go | + तृच् $=$ | गन्तृ (goer) | गच्छति इति गन्ता । |
| ज्ञा (9P) to know | + तृच् $=$ | ज्ञातृ (knower) | जानाति इति ज्ञाता। |
| दा (3U) to give | + तृच् $=$ | दातृ (giver) | ददाति इति दाता। |
| धा (3U) to support | + तृच् $=$ | धातृ (supporter) | दधाति इति धाता। |
| दृरू (1P) to see | + तृच् $=$ | द्रष्ट己 (seer)* | पइयति इति द्रष्टा। |
| दुह् (2P) to milk | + तृच् $=$ | दोग्धृ (one who milks) | दोग्धि इति दोग्धा। |
| भुज् (7U) to experience | + तृच् $=$ | भोक्तृ (experiencer) | भुनक्ति अनुभवति इति भोक्ता। |
| प्र + मा (2P) to know | + तृच् $=$ | प्रमातृ (knower) | प्रमाति इति प्रमाता। |
| श्रु (5P) to hear | + तृच् $=$ | श्रोतृ (hearer) | श्रणोति इति श्रोता। |
| सृज (6P) to create) | + तृच् $=$ | स्टष्टृ (creator)* | सृजति इति स्रष्ट। |
| स्तु (2P) to praise | + तृच् $=$ | स्तोतृ (one who praises) | स्तौति इति स्तोता। |
| अनु + स्था to perform | + तृच् $=$ | अनुष्ठातृ (one who performs) | अनुतिष्ठति इति अनुष्ठाता । |
| हन् (2P) to injure | + तृच् $=$ | हन्तृ (injurer) | हन्ति इति हन्ता। |
| हु (3U) to sacrifice | + तृच् $=$ | होतृ (one who sacrifices) | जुहोति इति होता। |
| कारि to make someone do | + तृच् $=$ | कारयितृ (impeller) | कारयति इति कारयिता। |
| * Irregular forms |  |  |  |

## Exercise 1:

What is the व्युत्पत्ति of the following कृदन्त words? Answer in the format of the example answer.

1. कर्तृणाम्
2. दात्रे
3. भोक्तारः
4. अनुष्ठातॄणाम्
5. कर्तृभ्याम्
6. धातृषु
7. भोक्तॄन्
8. स्रष्टरि
9. गन्तारम्
10. दोग्धारम्
11. प्रमातुः
12. हन्तारः
13. ज्ञातारौ
14. द्रष्टु:
15. श्रोतृभिः
16. होतारम्

## Example answer to 1:

The व्युत्पत्ति of the word कर्ता is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is कृ (to do)
c) The कृत-प्रत्यय is तृच. Thus this is called तृजन्त word.
d) The विग्रह is "कुर्वन्ति इति कर्तारः, तेषां कर्तृणाम".
e) The suffix denotes the कर्ता of the action. Thus, this is कर्तरि व्युत्पत्तिः.

Exercise 2: Find तृजन्त words, identify their धातुs, give विग्रह्वाक्य for तृजन्त कृद्वृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. ईश्वरः जगतः स्रष्टा अस्ति ।
2. एतत् श्रोतृभिः अवगम्यते ।
3. दोग्धा गोपलनन्दनः।
4. दात्रे नमः।
5. कर्मणां कर्तारः फलानां भोक्तारः सन्ति।
6. स्रुष्टः जगत् जायते।
7. सः हन्तारं जानाति।
8. द्रष्टु: द्रष्टा न नइयति ।
9. सः यज्ञस्य होतारं नमति ।
10. आचार्यः ग्रन्थस्य श्रोतृणां राङां पइयति ।
11. सः मार्गस्य गन्तृन् पइयति।
12. एषः शाब्दः कर्तरि प्रयुज्यते।
13. लोकः भोक्त्रा अनुभूयते।
14. दातरि सति आदाता भवति ।

Note:
The कर्म of तृजन्त word, when not denoted by तिङन्त्त word, is expressed in the $6^{\text {th }}$ case. In other words, undenoted कर्म takes षष्ठी विभक्ति. (This type of $6^{\text {th }}$ case is called कर्मणि षष्ठी.)

## b. णवुलू

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "गुत्र्":

1) What णुवुल् denotes:

- कर्ता (agent)

2) Content of ग्वुल्

- वु which is converted to "अक" by 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of ण्वुल् and their function

- ण् - By 1.3.7 चुटू. This causes वृद्यि on अङ्झ
- ल - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्झ

- वृद्यि takes place, if applicable. See Topic IV.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक declines in 3 लिद्ञs.
- The लिद्भ is determined by the लिझ्झ of the noun, which the णुुल--ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In पुँल्लिझ and नपुंसकलिझ्न, it declines as अ-ending.
- In स्र्रीलिझ, a feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added, the short अ before क् is changed into इ, and it declines as आ-ending feminine. E.g., कारिका, पालिका

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- For example, "करोति इति कारकः।", "सेवते इति सेविका स्री", etc.

For example, to make a word whose meaning is a purifier, an agent of purifying:

1) पू + ण्वुल् A कृत्-प्रत्यय णुवुल् (~er) is suffixed to the धातु पू (to purify). By the addition of the suffix, पू is qualified to be an अङ.
2) पू + वु ण् and ल् of णुुल् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) पू + अक The remaining वु is replaced by अक.
4) पौ + अक The suffix, being a णित, causes वृद्धि to the अङ्भ.
5) पाव् + अक अय्-अव्-आय्-आव् sandhi is applied.
6) पावक Being कृदन्त (that which ends with कृत्-प्रत्यय), this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

The विग्रहवाक्य of this new प्रातिपदिक will be like "पुनाति इति पावकः।". Declension of this word will be पावकः, पावकौ, पावकाः, ...

Here are more examples of ण्वुल् -ending words:

| धातुः |  | New प्रातिपदिकम् | विग्रहवाक्यम् |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| कृ (8U) to do | + णवुल् $=$ | कारक (doer) | करोति इति कारकः। |
| दह् (1P) to burn | + णवुल् $=$ | दाहक (one who burns) | दहति इति दाहकः। |
| नी (1U) to lead | + णवुल् = | नायक (leader) | नयति इति नायकः। |
| सेव् (1A) to serve | + णवुल् $=$ | सेवक (one who serves) | सेवते इति सेवकः। |
| साध् (5P) to accomplish | + णवुल् $=$ | साधक (accomplisher) | साधोति इति साधकः। |
| दृरा (1P) to see | + णवुल् = | दर्शक (seer) | पइयति इति दर्शाकः। |
| याच् (1U) to beg | + णवुल् = | याचक (one who begs) | याचते इति याचकः। |
| पू (9P) to purify | + णवुल् $=$ | पावक (purifier) | पुनाति इति पावकः। |
| भिद्न (7U) to separate | + णवुल् = | भेदक (divider) | भिनत्ति इति भेदकः। |
| वृध (1A) to grow | + णवुल् = | वर्धक (one who grows) | वर्धते इति वर्धकः। |

Here are examples of णिजन्त-धातुs (causative roots) becoming णवुल्लू-ending words.

## धातु:

ज्ञा + णिच् $=$ ज्ञापि + ण्वुल्
मुद् + णिच् = मोदि + णुल् = मोदक (one who makes happy)
स्था + णिच् = स्थापि + णुुल् = स्थापक (one who establishes)
पठ् + णिच् = पाठि + णुुल् $=$ पाठक (one who teaches) पाठयति इति पाठकः।

## Exercise 1:

What is the व्युत्पत्ति of the following कृदन्त words? Answer in the format of the example answer.

1. कारकान्
2. नायकौ
3. वर्धकाय
4. मोदकानि
5. दाहकेम्यः
6. दर्शकात्
7. स्थापकम्
8. ज्ञापिकया
9. सेवकानाम्
10. पावकानि
11. पाठकेषु
12. प्रतिपादकात्

Example answer to 1 :
The व्युत्पत्ति of the word कारकाः is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is कृ (to do)
c) The कृत्-प्रत्यय is णुुल्.
d) विग्रह is "कुर्वन्ति इति कारकाः, तान् कारकान".
e) The suffix denotes the कर्ता of the action. Thus, this is कर्तरि व्युत्पत्तिः.

Exercise 2: Find कृदन्त words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, give विग्रह्रवाक्य for ण्वुलु-ending कृद्दृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. सा याचकाय भिक्षां ददाति।
2. एतत् साधनं बुद्देः वर्धकम्।
3. सः मार्गस्य गन्तृणां नायकः भवति।
4. शास्त्री तस्य सेवकैः सह आगच्छति ।
5. दानं तपांसि च मनुष्यानां पावकानि सन्ति।
6. गुरुः भेदक्कान् बाधते।

Note: Here too, the undenoted कर्मs take षष्ठी विभक्ति. (This type of $6^{\text {th }}$ case is called कर्मणि घष्ठी.)

## c. किवप्

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "क्विप्":

1) What क्विप् denotes:

- कर्ता (agent)

2) Content of क्विप्

- Zero-प्पत्ययः (When only व् of विं remains in a suffix, that व् is also elided by 6.1.67 वेरपृक्तस्य।)

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of किवप् and their function

- क् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते।. गुण and वृद्धि are prohibited to take place in अङ्भ.
- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् ।. When धातु is ending with a short vowel, त् is attached at the end of the धातु.
- इ - This is just for pronunciation. (उच्चारणार्थम)

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- क्रिप् being कित, no गुण or वृद्धि takes place in अङ.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक declines in 3 लिझ्भs.
- The लिङ्ञ is determined by the लिङ्j of the noun, which the क्विप्-ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new क्विप्-ending प्रातिपदिकs decline according to the last letter.
- In स्र्रिलिङ, no feminine suffix is attached.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- Being कर्तरि प्रत्यय, तिङन्त्त in कर्तरि प्रयोग is used. "राजते इति राट् ।", "विभ्राजते इति विभ्राट्", etc.

The क्विप्-ending word is commonly called क्विबन्त (that which ends with किवप).

For example, to make a word denoting an agent of षद्न धातु, whose meanings are विशारण-गतिअवसादन, with two उपसर्गs, उप and नि :

1) सद् The ष् of धातु षद् is replaced by स. (6.1.64)
2) उप + नि + सद्न + क्विप् A कृत्-प्रत्यय क्विप् ( ( er) is suffixed to उप + नि + सद्ड. By the addition of the suffix, सद्न is qualified to be an अङ्ग.
3) उप + नि + सद्न + वि क् and प् of क्विप् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) उप + नि + सद् $\quad$ a is also elided. (6.1.67) इ for pronunciation is taken away.
5) उप + नि + षद् $\quad$ Because of the preceding इ of नि, स् of सद् is replaced by ष्. (8.3.59)
6) उपनिषद् $\quad$ Being कृदन्त (that which ends with कृत्-प्रत्यय), this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्. (1.2.46)
The new प्रातिपदिक is feminine and the declension will be उपनिषत/दू, उपनिषदौ, उपनिषदः, उपनिषदम् ...

Here are more examples of क्विप् -ending (किवबन्त) words:

## धातु:

New प्रातिपदिकम विग्रहवाक्यम्
राज् (1U) to shine + क्विप् $=$ राज् (one who shines) राजते इति राट् ।
वि + भ्राज् (1A) to shine + क्विप् = विभ्राज् (one who shines) विभ्राजते इति विभ्राट् ।
लिह् (2P) to lick + क्विप् = लिह् (one who licks) लेढि इति लिट् ्।
भास् (1A) to shine + क्विप् $=$ भास् (one who shines) भासते इति भास् ।
ऊर्ज् (10U) to strengthen + क्विप् = ऊर्ज् (one who strengthens) ऊर्जयति इति ऊर्क् ।

In some cases, क्विप् requires उपपद, a noun related to the धातु to which the क्विप् is suffixed.
See Topic IX 2 j . उपपदतत्पुरुषसमासः for more information.

For reference, this is how the प्रातिपदिक "राज्" declines in $1^{\text {st }}$ case singular:
राज् + सुँ सुप-प्रत्यय is added.
राज $+\quad$ स of सुँ is elided when प्रातिपदिक ends with consonant. (6.1.68)
राष् 8.2.36 वश्वभ्रस्जसृजमृजयजराजभाजच्छशां षः। ~ झलि पद्स्य अन्ते च
राड् 8.2.39 झलां जइोऽन्ते। $\sim$ पदस्य
राट्
8.4.56 वावसाने। ~ चर् झलाम्

## Topic VII - कृदन्तम् - Kṛdanta

## 3. निष्ठा (क्त \& क्तवतुँ)

$\square$ These two suffixes are together given a technical name of निष्ठा. (1.1.26 क्तक्तवतू निष्ठा।)
a. क्त denotes कर्म, कर्ता, and भावे of a past or present action
b. क्तवतुँ denotes an agent of a past action
$\square$ निष्ठा is a technical term used in Pāṇini sūtras for the following purposes:

- निष्ठा-त section from 8.2.42 of Pāṇini sūtras where "त" of निष्ठा-प्रत्यय changes into "न्" and other changes associated with that.
E.g., पद् + क्त $=$ पन्न
- बहुव्रीहिसमास, निष्ठा-प्रत्यय-ending word should come as a पूर्वपद.
E.g., विदितात्मा, मुदितवद्नः, शुद्दूसत्त्वः, etc.
$\square$ The following is a chart of the possible combinations of the basic senses and additional senses of निष्ठा-प्रत्ययs. The explanation follows.

|  | Additional <br> Basic sence | भूते (3.2.102 निष्ठा। ~ भूते) | वर्तमाने (3.2.188 मतिबुद्दिपूजार्थेम्यश्च।) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| क | कर्मणि <br> (3.4.70) | देवदत्तेन श्लोकः श्रुतः (that has been heard) <br> देवदत्त्तेन ग्रामं गतम् (that has been reached) | एषः मम मतः, इष्टः (is desired) <br> हरिः योगिनां ज्ञातः, बुद्यः (is known) <br> रिावः देवानां पूजितः, अर्चितः (is <br> worshipped) |
|  | भावे <br> (3.4.70) | देवदत्तेन गतम् (going in the past) <br> अग्निना ज्वलितम् (lighting in the past) | मम मतम, इट्टम (desire) <br> योगिनां ज्ञातं, बुद्दम् (knowledge) <br> देवानां पूजितम, अर्चितम् (worship) |
|  | कर्तरि (3.4.72 <br> गत्यर्थ-अकर्मक..।) | देवदत्तः ग्रामं गतः (who has gone) <br> अग्निः ज्वलितः (which has lit) | $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$ |
| क्तवतुँ | कर्तरि (3.4.67) | देवदत्तः ग्रामं गतवान् (who has gone) | n/a |

## a. .

$\square$ Of the कृतु-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "क्त":

1) What क्ष denotes:

- कर्म (object)
- कर्ता (agent) when the meaning of धातु is going (गत्यर्थ), or when धातु is intransitive
- भावे (action itself)

As additional sense, past tense comes as default. If the meaning of धातु is desire, knowledge, or worship, the tense can also be present. (See the chart in the previous page.)
2) Content of क्त-प्रत्यय

- त

3) इत् (indicatory) letter of क्त and its function

- क् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते।. निषेध (prohibition) of गुण and वृद्धि in अङ

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- Being निष्ठा-प्रत्यय, both दू at the end of धातु and त् of क्त become न. E.g., भिद्न + त = भिन्न
- न/म् at the end of some धातु may drop. E.g., हन + त = हत; गम् + त = गत
- Some sandhi rules may apply, as seen in the examples.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक declines in 3 लिझ्झs. The लिद्ञ is determined by the लिद्ञ of the noun, which the निष्ठा-ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In पुँल्लिङ्ञ and नपुंसकलिङ्ञ, क्त-ending प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending.
- In स्र्रीलिङ, a feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added to क्ष-ending प्रातिपदिक, and declines as आ-ending feminine like गङ्भा.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत--वृत्तिः

- As it is very common, विग्रहवाक्य is not much seen for this कृत्-वृत्ति. If necessary, a word consists of the धातु and प्रत्यय with same meanings will be used.

To derive a क्त-ending word ज्ञात,

1) ज्ञा + क्त $A$ कृत-प्रत्यय क्त is suffixed to धातु ज्ञा (to know).

By the addition of the suffix, ज्ञा gains the status of अङ्ग.
2) ज्ञा + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) ज्ञात Being कृदन्त, this is a प्रातिपदिकम्.

The meaning of ज्ञात is "object which has been known" in कर्मणि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

With a द्-ending धातु, both द्र at the end of धातु and त् of क्त become न.

1) प्र + सद् + क्त A कृत्-प्यत्यय क्त is suffixed to धातु सद् with प्र (to be pleased).
2) प्र + सद् + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) प्र + सन् + न When followed by निष्ठा-प्रत्यय, both the द् at the end of धातु and the त् of निष्ठा-प्रत्यय become न, by 8.2.42 रदाभ्यां निष्ठातो नः पूर्वस्य च दः।
4) प्रसन्न Being कृदन्त, this is a new प्रातिपदिकम्.

Similarly, दु-ending धातु with क्त-प्रत्यय undergoes the same modifications. प्र + पद् + क्त $=$ प्रपन्न, अद्न + क्त $=$ अन्न, भिद्न + क्त $=$ भिन्न, etc.

The meaning of प्रसन्न is "one who has been pleased" in कर्तरि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

With a न/म-ending धातु, that nasal letter is elided.

1) गम् + क्त $A$ कृत-प्रत्यय क्त is suffixed to धातु गम् (to go).
2) गम् + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) गत The last nasal sound म् is dropped. Being कृदन्त, this is a प्रातिपदिकम्.

In the same manner, some of धातुs ending with a nasal sound will lose that last letter. E.g., नम + क्त $=$ नत, रम + क्त $=$ रत, यम + क्त $=$ यत, हन + क्त $=$ हत, तन + क्त $=$ तत, मन + क्त $=$ मत, etc.

The meaning of गत is "object which has been reached" in कर्मणि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः, whereas it is "one who has gone" in कर्तरि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः, and it is "going in the past" in भावे भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

चवर्ग at the end of धातु becomes कवर्ग.

1) त्यज् + क्त A कृत्प्रत्यय क्त is suffixed to the धातु त्यज् (to abandon).
2) त्यज् + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) त्यग् + त By 8.2.30 चोः कुः। , the चवर्ग followed by झल् is replaced by कवर्ग.
4) त्यक् + त By 8.4.55 खरि च। the झल् followed by खर् becomes चर् (hard).
5) त्यक्त Being कृदन्त, this is a new प्रातिपदिकम्.

In the same manner, मुच् + क्त $=$ मुक्त, भुज् + क्त $=$ भुक्त, युज् + क्त $=$ युक्त, etc.
The meaning of त्यक्त is "object which has been abandoned" in कर्मणि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

With शा/ष्-ending धातु, the last letter of धातु becomes ष् and the त् of क्त becomes ट्.

1) नशा + क्त A कृत-प्रत्यय क्त is suffixed to the धातु नशा (to perish).
2) नशा + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) नष् + त By 8.2.36 वश्वभस्जसृजमृजयजराजभ्राजच्छइां षः। the शा becomes ष्.
4) नष् + ट By 8.4.41 ष्टुना ष्टु:। , the त् in contact with ष्. becomes ट्.
5) नष्ट Being कृदन्त, this is a new प्रातिपदिकम्.

In the same manner, इष् + क्त = इष्ट, दृश + क्त = दृष्ट, स्पशा + क्त = स्पष्ट, etc.
The meaning of नष्ट is "agent who has perished" in कर्तरि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

With धातु which ends with the letter in the $4^{\text {th }}$ of the class, the last letter of धातु becomes $3^{\text {rd }}$ of the class and the त् of क्त becomes ध.

1) शुध् + क्त A कृत-प्रत्यय क्त is suffixed to the धातु शुध् (to purify).
2) शुध् + त क् of क्त is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) शुध् + ध By 8.2.40 झषस्तथोर्धोऽघः। , the त् preceded by झष् is replaced by ध.
4) शुद्न + ध By 8.4.53 झलां जशा झशि।, the ध् followed by झशा is replaced by द.
5) शुद्ध Being कृदन्त, this is a new प्रातिपदिकम्.

In the same manner, झष् ( $4^{\text {th }}$ of the class) at the end of धातु becomes जइा ( $3^{\text {rd }}$ of the class) and the त् of क्त becomes ध. सिध् + क्त $=$ सिद्ध, बुध् + क्त $=$ बुद्द, लभ् + क्त $=$ लब्ध, रभ + क्त $=$ रब्घ, etc.

The meaning of शुद्द is "object which has been purified" in कर्मणि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः, whereas it is "purifying in the past" in भावे भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

Here are more examples of क्त-ending (क्तान्त) words:
धातु:
New प्रातिपदिकम with selected meanings as example
कृ (8U) to do $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ कृत (that which has been done)
ज्ञा (9P) to know + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ ज्ञात (that which has been known)
भू (1P) to be + क्त (कर्मणि) = भूत (that which has been there)
श्रु (5P) to hear $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ श्रुत (that which has been heard)
हु (3U) to sacrifice + क्त (कर्मणि) = हुत (that which has been sacrificed)

## * इट्-आगम comes to the क्त with the following धातुs

पठ् (1P) to study $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ पठित (that which has been studied)
विद्न (2P) to know + क्त (कर्मणि) = विदित (that which has been known)

## * The last दु of the following धातुs and त् of क्त both become न.

भिद्न (7P) to separate + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ भिन्न (that which has been separated)
अद्न (2P) to eat $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) = अन्न (that which has been eaten)
प्र + पद् to resort to $\quad+$ क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ प्रपन्न (one who has resorted to)
प्र + सद्न to be pleased + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ प्रसन्न (one who has been pleased)

## * The last nasal letter of the following धातुs is elided.

गम् (1P) to go + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ गत (that which has been reached)
गम् (1P) to go + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ गत (one who has gone)
नम् (1P) to salute $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ नत (that which has been saluted)
नम् (1P) to salute + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ नत (one who has saluted)
यम् (1P) to strive + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ यत (one who has strived)
हन् (2P) to injure + क्त (कर्मणि) = हत (that which has been injured)

* The last letter of the following धातुs take कुत्वम, and चर्त्वम when applicable.

मुच् (6P) to set free + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ मुक्त (that which has been released)
भुज् (7U) to eat $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ भुक्त (that which has been eaten, experienced)
त्यज् (1P) to give up + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ त्यक्त (that which has been given up)
युज् (7U) to unite + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ युक्त (that which has been united)

## * The last letter of the following धातुs is/becomes ष्and ष्टुत्व on the तु of क्त.

इष् (6P) to wish $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ इष्ट (that which has been wished)
दृरा (1P) to see $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ दृष्ट (that which has been seen)
नशू (4P) to perish $\quad+$ क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ नष्ट (one who has destroyed)
स्पशू (1P) to see $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ स्पष्ट (that which has been clearly perceived)

With the following धातुs, "त" of क्त becomes "ध"" and the last letter of the धातु becomes जरा.
लभ् (1A) to gain + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ लब्ध (that which has been gained)
रभ् (1A) to start + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ रब्ध (that which has been started)
बुध् (1P) to know + क्त (कर्तरि) = बुद्द (one who has known)
बुध् (1P) to know + क्त (कर्मणि) = बुद्द (that which has been known)
शुधू (1P) to purify $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) = शुद्ध (that which has been purified)
सिध् (4P) to succeed + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ सिद्द (that which has been accomplished)

* धातुs which are subject to संप्रसारणम् (यण् becomes इक)

वच् (2P) to say $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ उक्त (that which has been said)
प्रछ् (6P) to ask $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ पृष्ट (that which has been asked)

## * Other irregular forms

दुह् (2P) to milk $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) = दुग्ध (that which has been milked, milk)
स्था (1P) to stay $\quad+$ क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ स्थित (one who has been there)
धा (3U) to place + क्त (कर्मणि) = हित (that which has been placed)
राम् (4P) to be calm + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ शान्त (one who has been calmed)
जन् $(4 \mathrm{~A})$ to be born + क्त (कर्तरि) $=$ जात (one who has been born)
दा (3U) to give $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ दत्त (that which has been given)
प्र + दा to give away + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ प्रत्त (that which has been given away)

## * णिजन्त (causative) धातुs

स्थापि to place $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ स्थापित (that which has been placed)
दर्शि to show $\quad+$ क्त (कर्मणि) $=$ दर्शात (that which has been shown)
प्रति + बोधि to teach + क्त (कर्मणि) = प्रतिबोधित (that which has been taught)

## * सन्नन्त (desiderative) धातुs

ईप्स to desire to gain + क्त (कर्मणि) $=\quad$ ईप्सित (that which has been desired to gain)
जिज्ञास to desire to know + क्त (कर्मणि) $=\quad$ जिज्ञासित (that which has been desired to be known)
विवक्ष to desire to convey + क्त (कर्मणि) $=\quad$ विवक्षित (that which has been desired to be conveyed)
व्याचिख्यास to desire to comment upon + क्त (कर्मणि) $=$
व्याचिर्यासित (that which has been desired to be commented upon)

Exercise 1: Find क्तान्त words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, find what is denoted by क्त-प्रत्यय, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word. See the examples.

Example 1: उपदेशः देवदत्तेन श्रुतः भवति । (The teaching is heard by Devadatta.)

- क्तान्त word:
- धातु and प्रत्यय:
- What is denoted:
- उपदेशाः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (teaching)
- श्रुतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (heard) समानाधिकरण to उपदेशाः ${ }^{1 / 1}$
- देवदत्तेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by Devadatta) कर्तरि तृतीया to श्रुतः

An undenoted कर्ता takes $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending. In the example, with reference to श्रु (to hear), कर्म is denoted by क्त-प्रत्यय, while कर्ता, देवदत्त, is not denoted. In such case, the undenoted कर्ता takes कर्तरि तृतीया विभक्तिः

Example 2: देवदत्तः ग्रामं गतः भवति । (Devadatta is the one who has reached the village.)

- क्तान्त word:
- धातु and प्रत्यय:
- What is denoted:
- देवद्त्तः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (by Devadatta) कर्तरि प्रथमा to भवति
- गतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (one who has reached) समानाधिकरण to देवदत्तः ${ }^{1 / 1}$
- ग्राम ${ }^{2 / 1}$ (village) कर्मणि to गतः

An undenoted कर्म takes $2^{\text {nd }}$ case. In the example, with reference to गम् (to go), क्र-प्रत्यय is denoting the कर्ता, while the कर्म "ग्राम" is not denoted. So, the undenoted कर्म takes कर्मणि द्वितीया विभक्तिः.

1. दृष्टा सीता मया।
2. अस्य पुरुषस्य कृत्यं कृतम्।
3. मया श्रोतव्यानि सर्वाणि श्रुतानि भवन्ति।
4. अहं पाणिनिं प्रणतः अस्मि ।
5. सः विहितं कर्म कृत्वा इषं फलम् आम्नोति ।
6. सः मनः गतान् कामान् परयति।
7. उत्केन वाक्येन पृष्टः विषयः स्पष्टः भवति।
8. गुरुं उपसन्नाय रिष्याय सा वदाति।
9. पुत्रे पुष्टे अहं पुष्टः। पुत्रे नष्टे अहं नष्टः।
10. एषणासु त्यक्तासु शान्तः भवति ।

## b. क्तवतुँ

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "क्रवतुँ":

1) What क्तवतुँ denotes:

- कर्ता (agent) of past action (कर्तरि भूते)

2) Content of क्षवतुँ-प्रत्यय

- तवत्

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of क्षवतुँ and their function

- क - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते।. निषेध (prohibition) of गुण and वृद्धि in अङ्ञ
- उँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्।. In declension the new प्रातिपदिक is treated as उगित् (that which has उक् as इत)

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- The same modification as क्त.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The new प्रातिपदिक declines in 3 लिझ्झs. The लिझ्झ is determined by the लिझ्भ of a noun, which the निष्ठा-ending word qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In पुँद्धिझ and नपुंसकलिङ, क्रवतुँ-ending प्रातिपदिक declines like भगवत्.
- In स्त्रीलिङ्झ, a feminine suffix ङीप् (ई) is added to क्तवतुँ-ending प्रातिपदिक. It declines like नदी.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- क्तवतुँ-ending word itself is used as विग्रहवाक्य for तिङन्त in the past tenses.
- For example, "अकरोत" is a तिङन्त्र consists of कृ + लङ् (भूते, past tense)/कर्तरि/III/1. For this तिङन्त्त, "कृतवान" which consists of कृ + क्तवतु (भूते, past tense)/कर्तरि may be supplied as explanation.
- Similarly, for "त्वम् अकरोः (कृ + लङ्/कर्तरि/II/1) ", "कृतवान् असि" may be given.

For example, to make a word whose meaning is an agent who has known:

1) ज्ञा + क्तवतुँ $A$ कृत-प्रत्यय क्तवतुँ is suffixed to the धातु ज्ञा (to know). By the addition of the suffix, 国 is qualified to be an अझ्ग.
2) ज्ञा + तवत् क् and जँ of क्ष are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) ज्ञातवत् Being कृदन्त (that which ends with कृत्-प्रत्यय), this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

The new प्रातिपदिक declines in the same manner as भगवत्. In masculine, it declines as ज्ञातवान, ज्ञातवन्तौ, ज्ञातवन्तः, ज्ञातवन्तम, ज्ञातवन्तौ, ज्ञातवतः, ज्ञातवता, etc. In feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय (feminine suffix) ई is added. The feminine form ज्ञातवती declines in the same manner as नदी, such as ज्ञातवती, ज्ञातवत्यौ, ज्ञातवत्यः, etc.

Here are more examples of क्तवतुँ-ending words:

| धातु: | New प्रातिपदिकम |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| कृ (8U) to do | + क्तवतुँ $=$ | कृतवत् (one who has done) |
| श्रु (5P) to hear | + क्तवतुँ $=$ | श्रुतवत् (one who has heard) |
| पठ् (1P) to study | + क्तवतुँ $=$ | पठितवत् (one who has studied) |
| विद् (2P) to know | + क्तवतुँ = | विद्वतवत् (one who has known) |
| गम् (1P) to go | + क्तवतुँ = | गतवत् (one who has gone) |
| त्यज् (1P) to give up + + क्तवतुँ = | त्यक्तवत् (one who has given up) |  |
| भुज् (7U) to eat | + क्तवतुँ = | भुक्तवत् (one who has eaten, experienced) |
| दृशा (1P) to see | + क्तवतुँ = | दृष्टवत् (one who has seen) |
| वच् (2P) to say | + क्तवतुँ = | उक्तवत् (one who has said) |
| प्रछ् (6P) to ask | + क्तवतुँ = | पृष्टवत् (one who has asked) |
| दा (3U) to give | + क्तवतुँ = | दत्तवत् (one who has given) |
| लभ् (1A) to gain | + क्तवतुँ = | लब्धवत् (one who has gained) |

Refer to the list of क्त-ending words for more forms as the formations of the प्रातिपदिक are the same for both क्त and क्तवतुँ.

## Exercise 1:

What is the व्युत्पत्ति of the following कृदन्त words? Answer in the format of the example below.

1. कृतवते
2. त्यक्तवत्सु
3. श्रुतवताम्
4. भुक्तवतः
5. गतवन्तः
6. दत्तवान्
7. पृष्टवते
8. दृष्टवन्तः

Example answer to 1 :
The व्युत्पत्ति of the word कृतवते is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is कृ (to do).
c) The कृत-प्रत्यय is क्तवतुँ.
d) विग्रह is "अकरोत् इति कृतवान, तस्मै कृतवते।" (Use लड्, लकार to express the action in past.)
e) The suffix denotes the कर्ता of the action in the past. Thus, this is कर्तरि भूते व्युत्पत्तिः.

Exercise 2: Find क्तवतुँ-ending words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. अहं तत्त्वं ज्ञातवान् अस्मि।
2. एषः विषयः त्यक्तवता न इष्यते।
3. ते जनाः सर्वं त्यक्तवन्तः ।
4. गुरुः प्रश्नं पृष्टवते रिष्याय उत्तरं वदति ।
5. देवदत्तः कथां श्रुतवन्तं पृच्छति।
6. तत्त्वं विदितवतां शान्तिः अस्ति।
7. गुरुः ग्रन्थं पठितवतः परीक्षते।
8. सा सत्यम् उक्तवती।

Note:
The कर्म of a क्तवतुँ-ending word, when not denoted by a तिङन्त्त word, is expressed in the $2^{\text {nd }}$ case. In other words, undenoted कर्म takes कर्मणि द्वितीया विभक्तिः.

## 4. शातूँ/रानच. (Replacement for लट् and लुट)

$\square$ शातृँ and शानच् are substitutions for both लट्-लकार (present tense) and लृट्-लकार (second future tense).
$\square$ रातृँ is classified as परस्मैपद्म्.
$\square$ शानच् is classified as आत्मनेपद्म.
$\square$ शातृँ/रानच् are used as substitutions for लकार, just like तिङ्--प्रत्ययs. The only difference is:

- तिङ्-पप्रत्ययs make तिङन्त्तs (verbs)
- रातृँ/रानच् make कृदन्तं प्रातिपदिकम्
$\square$ शातृँ/रानच-ending words are used to qualify a noun by the present/future action. E.g., सः पचन्तं देवदत्तं परयति । He sees Devadatta who is cooking.

सः वक्ष्यमाणं वाक्यं मन्यते। He thinks about the sentence which is going to be told.
$\square$ We are going to see the comparison between तिङन्त्तम and रातृँ/शानच-ending words in लट् लकारः (present tense) and लृट् लकारः (second future tense) in both प्रयोगs (voices) with both परस्मैपदी and आत्मनेपदी धातुs, in the following pages.

Summary of comparison between तिङन्त्तम् and रातृँ/शानच्-ending words

| लकारः | प्रयोगः | धातुः | ex \# | तिङन्त्रम् | रातृँ/रानच्-अन्तम् |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| लट् | कर्तरि | परस्मैपदी | 1 | पइयति (he sees) | पइयन् (one who is seeing) |
|  |  | आत्मनेपदी | 2 | लभते (he gains) | लभमानः (one who is gaining) |
|  | कर्मणि | परस्मैपदी | 3 | हृइयते (it is seen) | दृरयमानः (what is being seen) |
|  |  | आत्मनेपदी | 4 | लम्यते (it is gained) | लम्यमानः (what is being gained) |
| लृट् | कर्तरि | परस्मैपदी | 5 | वक्ष्यति (he will speak) | वक्ष्यन् (one who will speak) |
|  |  | आत्मनेपदी | 6 | लप्स्यते (he will gain) | लप्स्यमानः (one who will gain) |
|  | कर्मणि | परस्मैपदी | 7 | वक्ष्यते (it will be spoken) | वक्ष्यमानः (what will be spoken) |
|  |  | आत्मनेपदी | 8 | लप्स्यते (it will be gained) | लप्स्यमानः (what will be gained) |

Compare the following examples to see the similarities and differences between तिङ्प्रत्यय and शातृँ/शानच् in लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with both परस्मैपदी and आत्मनेपदी धातुs.

Example 1. लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with परस्मैपदी धातुः

1) दृशा + लट्
2) दृरा + ति तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्तम, a finite verb.
3) पइयति This is a तिङन्तम, a finite verb.
4) दृशा + लट्
5) दृरा + रातृँ After परस्मैपदी धातु, शातृँ is the substitution for लकार to make a प्रातिपदिकम.
6) पइयत् "The agent who is seeing". This is a प्रातिपदिकम, a participle. पइयत् declines as रातृँ-ending प्रातिपदिकम्.

Example 2. लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with आत्मनेपदी धातु:

1) लभ् + लट्
2) लम् + ते तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्तम, a finite verb.
3) लभते This is a तिङन्त्रम, a finite verb.
4) लम् + लट्
5) लभ् + शानच् After आत्मनेपदी धातु, शानच् is the substitution for लकार to make a प्रातिपदिकम्.
6) लभमान "The agent who is obtaining". This is a प्रातिपदिकम, a participle. लभमान declines as अ-ending प्रातिपदिकम्.

Now compare the following examples to see the similarities and differences between तिड्-प्रत्यय and शातृँ/शानच् in लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्माणि प्रयोग (passive voice), in which only आत्मनेपद्म is used.

Example 3. लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice) with परस्मैपदी धातुः

1) दृशा + लट्
2) दृरा + ते तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) दृरा + य + ते "य" is added to the अङ.
4) दृरयते This is a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
5) दृशा + लट्
6) दृरा + शानच् Because शानच् is classified as आत्मनेपद्म, and in कर्मणि प्रयोगः आत्मनेपदम् should be the substitute for लकार, शानच् is used here.
7) दृश् + य + मान Just like तिङन्त्त, "य" is added to अङ्ग
8) दृइयमान "The object which is being seen". This is a प्रातिपदिकम.

Example 4. लट्-लकारः (present tense) कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice) with आत्मनेपदी धातुः

1) लम् + लट्
2) लभ् + ते तिड् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) लभ् + य + ते "य" is added to अङ゙.
4) लम्यते This is a तिङन्त्रम, a finite verb.
5) लभ् + लट्
6) लभ् + शानच् Because शानच् is classified as आत्मनेपद्म, and in कर्मणि प्रयोगः आत्मनेपदम् should be the substitute for लकार, शानच् is used here.
7) लभ् + य + मान Just like तिङन्त्त, "य" is added to अङ्ग.
8) ऊम्यमान "The object which is being obtained". This is a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Here is the comparison of तिङ्-प्रत्यय and रातृँ/रानच् in लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with both परस्मैपदी and आत्मनेपदी धातुs.

Example 5. लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with परस्मेपदी धातु:

1) वच् + लृट्
2) वच् + ति तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) वच् + स्य + ति In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after धातु.
4) वक्ष्यति "he will speak".

After sandhi modifications, this is a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.

1) वच् + लृट्
2) वच् + रातृँ After परस्मैपदी धातु, रातृँ is the substitution for लकार to make प्रातिपदिकम्.
3) वच् + स्य + शातृँ In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) वक्ष्यत् "the agent who will be speaking".

After sandhi modifications, this is a प्रातिपदिकम, a participle.

Example 6. लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice) with आत्मनेपदी धातुः

1) लभ् + लृट्
2) लभ् + ते तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) लभ् + स्य + ते In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) लुप्यते
"he will gain". After sandhi, this is a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
5) लभ् + लृट्
6) लम् + शानच्

For आत्मनेपदी धातु, शानच् is the substitution for लकार to make a प्रातिपदिकम्.
3) लभ् + स्य + शानच् In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) लप् + स्य + मान Some modification happens.
5) लप्स्यमान
"the agent who will gain". This is a प्रातिपदिकम, a participle.

Now, here is the comparison of तिङ्-प्रत्यय and रातृँ/शानच् in लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice) in which only आत्मनेपद्म is used, with both परस्मैपदी and आत्मनेपदी धातुs.

Example 7. लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्माणि प्रयोगः (passive voice) with परस्मैपदी धातुः

1) वच् + लृट्
2) वच् + ते तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) वच् + स्य + ते In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) वक्ष्यते "it is going to be told".

After sandhi modifications, this is a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.

1) वच् + लृट्
2) वच् + शानच् Because शानच् is classified as आत्मनेपदम, and in कर्मणि प्रयोगः आत्मनेपदम् is the substitute for लकार, शानच् is used here.
3) वच् + स्य + शानच् In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) वक्ष्यमाण "the object which is going to be told".

After sandhi modifications, this is a प्रातिपदिकम, a participle.

Example 8. लृट्-लकारः (second future tense) कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice) with आत्मनेपदी धातुः The forms are identical to the ones in कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice).

1) लम् + लृट्
2) लभ् + ते तिङ् is the substitution for लकार to make a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
3) लभ् + स्य + ते In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
4) लुप्स्यते
"it will be gained". After sandhi, this is a तिङन्त्तम, a finite verb.
5) लम् + लृट्
6) लभ् + शानच् For आत्मनेपदी धातु, शानच् is the substitution for लकार to make a प्रातिपदिकम्.
7) लभ् + स्य + शानच् In लृट्-लकारः, "स्य" is added after the धातु.
8) लप् + स्य + मान Some modification happens.
9) ऊप्स्यमान "the object which will be gained". This is a प्रातिपदिकम.

## a. राव़ँ

$\square$ Of the कृतु-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "रातृँ":

1) What शातृँ denotes:

- कर्ता (agent) of present or future action of परस्मैपदी धातु.

2) Content of शातृँ-प्रत्यय

- अत्

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of शावृँ and their function

- शा - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्विते।

शित्-प्रत्यय which is suffixed to a धातु is called "सार्वधातुक-प्रत्ययः". तिङ् is also called सार्वधातुक-प्रत्ययः. Thus they both cause the same modifications on their अङ.

- ॠँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत।

ऋ is found in प्रत्याहारः उक्. A suffix whose इत् is उक् is called उगित्-प्रत्यय. उगित-प्रत्ययending words decline in certain manners.
4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- Substitute inherits the attributes of what is substituted.
- When शावृँ is a substitute to लट्, the अङ्झ will undergo modifications according to the class of धातु as we saw in लट्-लकार. For the final forms of अझ, see Volume 1.
- When शातृँ is a substitute to लृट्, the अङ्ञ will be formed in the same mannter as लृट्लकार. For the formation of अङ, see Volume 1.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- रातृँ-ending word takes the लिङ्ञ of the noun which it qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an उगित्-प्रत्यय-ending word, शातृँ-ending words decline in a similar manner to मतुँपू ending word. (See Volume 1) The only difference is in $1 / 1$.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- विग्रहवाक्य is not seen for this कृत्-वृत्ति.


## b. शानच

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "रानच":

1) What शानच् denotes:

- कर्ता (agent) of present or future action of आत्मनेपदी धातु.
- कर्म (object) of present or future action.
- भाव (action itself).

2) Content of शानच-प्रत्यय

- आन

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of शानच् and their function

- शा - By 1.3.8 लराक्रतद्धिते।

रित-प्रत्यय which is suffixed to धातु is called "सार्वधातुक-प्रत्ययः". तिङ् is also called सार्वधातुक-प्रत्ययः. Thus they both cause the same modifications on their अङ्भ.

- च् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्। For intonation

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- When अङ ends with अ, म् is added to the end of अङ्j.
- When शानच् is a substitute to लट्, the अङ् will undergo modifications as we saw in लट्-लकार. For the final forms of अङ्झ, see Volume 1.
- When शानच् is a substitute to लृट्, the अङ will be formed in the same mannter as लृट्-लकार.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- शानच-ending word takes the लिझ्ञ of the noun which it qualifies.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- शानच-ending word declines as अ-ending in masculine and neuter. In feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is added and declines as आ-ending feminine प्रातिपदिक.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- विग्रहवाक्य is not seen for this कृत्-वृत्ति.

Example 1. Derivation of पइयत् (an agent who is seeing), a रातृँ-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लट् (present tense), कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice), with परस्मैपदी धातुः:

1) दृशा + लट् A present tense suffix लट् is suffixed to the धातु दृरा (to see). By the addition of the suffix, दृशा is qualified to be an अङ.
2) दृरा + रातृँ रातृँ/रानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लट्. रातृँ is a परस्मैपद् प्रत्यय. Since दृरा is a परस्मैपदी धातुः, शातृँ is suffixed.
3) दृश् + अत् शू and 范 of शातृँ are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) पइय + अत् इातृँ, being रित, is a सार्वधातुक-प्रत्यय, so its अङ undergoes the same modification as it would to become a तिङन्त्त in लट्. The final modified forms of the अझ are found in the list in Volume 1.
5) परयत् After sandhi change, this is the final form. Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Example 2. Derivation of लभमान (an agent who is obtaining), a शानच्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लट् (present tense), कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice), with आत्मनेपदी धातुः:

1) लभ् + लट् A present tense suffix लट् is suffixed to the धातु लम् (to obtain). By the addition of the suffix, लम् is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) लम् + शानच्
3) लभ् + आन
4) लभ + आन
5) लभमान
6) लभम् + आन म् is added after अ-ending अङ्भ followed by आन. शातृँ/रानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लट्. शानच् is a आत्मनेपद प्रत्यय. Since लभ् is an आत्मनेपदी धातुः, शानच् is suffixed.

शू and च् of शानच् are इत् letters and hence elided.
शानच, being रित, is a सार्वधातुक-प्रत्यय, so its अझ undergoes the modification as it would to become a तिङन्त्त in लट्. The final modified forms of the अझ्झ are found in the list in Volume 1.

Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Example 3. Derivation of दृरयमान (an object which is being seen), a शानच्-पत्यय-अन्त word in लट् (present tense), कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice), with परस्मैपदी धातुः:

1) दृशा + लट् A present tense suffix लट् is suffixed to the धातु दृरा (to see). By the addition of the suffix, दृशा is qualified to be an अङ.
2) दृरा + शानच्
3) दृश् + आन

शू and चू of शानच् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) हृइय + आन शानच, being रित, is a सार्वधातुक-प्रत्यय, so its अङ undergoes the same modification as it would to become a तिङन्त्त in लट्. The final modified forms of the अझ are found in the list in Volume 1.
5) दृइयम् + आन म् is added after अ-ending अङ followed by आन.
6) हृरयमान Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम.

Example 4. Derivation of लम्यमान (an object which is being obtained), a शानच्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लट् (present tense), कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice), with आत्मनेपदी धातुः:

1) लम् + लट्
2) लम् + शानच्
3) लभ् + आन
4) लम्य + आन
5) लभ्यम् + आन म् is added after अ-ending अङ followed by आन.
6) लम्यमान Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Example 5. Derivation of वक्ष्यत् (an agent who will speak), a शातृँ-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लृट् (second future tense), कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice), with परस्मैपदी धातुः:

1) वच् + कृट् A second future tense suffix लृट् is suffixed to the धातु वच् (to speak). By the addition of the suffix, वच् is qualified to be an अङ्ग.
2) वच् + शातृँ रातृँ/ रानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लृट्. शातृँ is a परस्मैपद् प्रत्यय. Since वच् is a परस्मैपदी धातुः, शातृँ is suffixed.
3) वच् + अत् श and 華 of शातृँ are इत letters and hence elided
4) वच् + स्य + अत् In लृट्-लकार, the additional suffix "स्य" is to the धातुः.
5) वक्ष्यत्

After applying sandhi, this is the final form. Being a कृद्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Example 6. Derivation of लप्स्यमान (an agent who will obtain), a शानच्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लृट् (second future tense), कर्तरि प्रयोगः (active voice), with आत्मनेपदी धातुः:

1) लभ् + लृट्

A second future tense suffix लृट् is suffixed to धातु लम् (to obtain).
By the addition of the suffix, लम् is qualified to be an अङ.
2) लभ् + शानच् शातृँ/ शानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लृट्. शानच् is an आत्मनेपद् प्रत्यय. Since लभ् is an आत्मनेपदी धातुः, शानच् is suffixed.
3) लभ् + आन शू and च् of शानच् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) लभ् + स्य + आन In लृट्-लकार, the additional suffix "स्य" is to the धातु:.
5) लप्स्यम् + आन म is added after अ-ending अङ्ञs followed by आन.

By 8.4.55 खरि च।, भ् (झल्) followed स् (खऱ) is replaced by प् (चर्) .
6) लप्स्यमान Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Example 7. Derivation of वक्ष्यमाण (an object which will be told), a शानच्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लृट् (second future tense), कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice), with परस्मैपदी धातुः:

1) वच् + लृट्

A second future tense suffix लृट् is suffixed to the धातु वच् (to speak). By the addition of the suffix, वच् is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) वच् + शानच् रातृँ/रानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लृट्. शानच् is an आत्मनेपद प्रत्यय. Because in passive voice आत्मनेपद is used, शानच् is suffixed.
3) वच् + आन शू and च् of शानच् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) वच् + स्य + आन In लृट्-लकार, the additional suffix "स्य" is to the धातुः.
5) वक्ष्यम् + आन म् is added after अ-ending अङs followed by आन. Sandhi rules apply.
6) वक्ष्यमाण णत्वम् applies here. Being a कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Example 8. Derivation of लप्स्यमान (an object which will be obtained), a शानच्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word in लृट् (second future tense), कर्मणि प्रयोगः (passive voice), with आत्मनेपदी धातुः:

1) लभ् + लृट् A second future tense suffix लृट् is suffixed to धातु लभ् (to obtain).

By the addition of the suffix, लम् is qualified to be an अङ.
2) लम् + शानच्

शातृँ/शानच् are प्रत्ययs which are substitutes for लृट्. शानच् is an आत्मनेपद् प्रत्यय. Because in passive voice आत्मनेपद is used, शानच् is suffixed.
3) लभ् + आन शू and च् of शानच् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) लभ् + स्य + आन In लृट्-लकार, the additional suffix "स्य" is to the धातुः.
5) लप्स्यम् + आन म् is added after अ-ending अङs followed by आन.

By 8.4.55 खरि च।, भ् (झल्) followed स् (खऱ) is replaced by प् (चऱ) .
6) लप्स्यमान Being a कृदन्त, this is a प्रातिपदिकम्.

Note that the final form is the same as the one in active voice, as shown in Example 6 in the previous page.

Here are some examples of शातृँ/रानच-ending words which are often seen in शास्त्रs:

| धातुः | प्रत्ययः (लकारः/प्ययोगः) | New प्रातिपदिकम |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| अस् (2P) to be | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | सत् (agent who is existing) |
| विद् ( 4 A ) to be | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | विद्यमान (agent who is existing) |
| वृत् (1A) to be | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | वर्तमान (agent who is existing) |
| गम् (1P) to go | + शातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) = | गच्छत् (agent who is going) |
| गम् (1P) to go | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि)= | गम्यमान (object which is being reached) |
| गम् (1P) to go | + शातृँ (लृट्/कर्तरि) = | गमिष्यत् (agent who will go) |
| गम् (1P) to go | + शानच् (ल¢ट्/कर्मणि) = | गमिष्यमाण (object which will be reached) |
| कृ (8U) to do | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | कुर्वत् (agent who is doing) |
| कृ (8U) to do | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | कुर्वाण (agent who is doing) |
| कृ (8U) to do | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि)= | क्रियमाण (object which is being done) |
| कृ (8U) to do | + शतृँ (लृट्/कर्तरि) = | करिष्यत् (agent who will do) |
| कृ (8U) to do | + शानच् (लृट्/ /कर्मणि)= | करिष्यमाण (object which will be done) |
| दृरा (1P) to see | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | परयत् (agent who is seeing) |
| दृरा (1P) to see | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि) $=$ | टृइयमान (object which is being seen) |
| श ${ }_{\text {人 }}(1 \mathrm{P}$ ) to hear | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | श्रेण्वत् (agent who is hearing) |
| श्रु (1P) to hear | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि) = | श्रूयमाण (object which is being heard) |
| भू (1P) to be | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | भवत् (agent who is existing) |
| भू (1P) to be | + शातृँ (लृट्/कर्तरि) = | भविष्यत् (agent who will exist) |
| ध्यै (1P) to meditate | + शातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) = | ध्यायत् (agent who is meditating) |
| पच् (1U) to cook | + रातृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) = | पचत् (agent who is cooking) |
| जनू (4A) to be born | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | जायमान (agent who is being born) |
| मन ( 4 A ) to think | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | मन्यमान (agent who is thinking) |
| आ + रभ् (1A) to start | + शानच् (लट्/कर्तरि) = | आरभमाण (agent who is starting) |
| आ + रभ् (1A) to start | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि)= | आरभ्यमाण (object which is being started) |
| बूर (2U) to speak | + शतृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) = | ब्रुवत् (agent who is speaking) |
| प्र + आप् (5P) to gain | + शानच् (लट्/कर्मणि) $=$ | प्राप्यमाण (object which is being gained) |
| इष् (6P) to wish | + रावृँ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ | इच्छत् (agent who is wanting) |

धातुः
लभ् (1A) to obtain लभ् (1A) to obtain + शानच् (लृट्/कर्तरि)= लभ् (1A) to obtain + शानच् (लट् /कर्तरि) = वच् (2P) to say + रातृँ (लृट्र $/$ कर्तरि) $=$ वच् $(2 P)$ to say + शानच् $($ (लृट् $/$ कर्मणि $)=$ कृ + णिच् = कारि + रातृ (लट्/कर्तरि) $=$ to make somebody do

+ शानच् (लृट् /कर्मणि) =
+ शातृ (लट्/कर्तरिरे) =

New प्रातिपदिकम

लम्यमान (object which is being obtained)
लप्स्यमान (agent who will obtain)
लभमान (agent who is obtaining)
वक्ष्यत् (agent who will speak)
वक्ष्यमाण (object which will be told)
कारयत्
(agent who is making somebody do)

Exercise 1: Give the information on व्युत्पत्ति of the following रातृँ/रानच-ending words. Answer in the following steps of the example.

1. गम्यमानः
2. विद्यमानम्
3. पइयन्तम्
4. सति
5. सत्
6. गमिष्यमाणः
7. प्रवर्तमानः
8. पइयद्भिः
9. सत्सु
10. सत्याम्
11. प्रप्यमाणानि
12. प्ययुज्यमानाः
13. गच्छत्सु
14. सतोः
15. अनुष्ठीयमानः
16. करिष्यन्
17. श्रूयमाणो
18. इच्छतोः
19. सतः
20. न्रुवता
21. कुर्वाणः
22. श्रण्वतः
23. श्रृण्वताम्
24. सन्तः
25. करिष्यमाणानि
26. ध्यायतः
27. कुर्वते
28. सन्तम्
29. नीयमानाः
30. नमताम्
31. गच्छति
32. सती

Example answer to 1:
a) Take out the प्रातिपदिक by taking off the विभक्ति.

गम्यमान + पुं/ $1 / 1$
b) Find out the धातु and प्रत्यय.

गम् (1P) + शानच्
c) Find out the लकार (लट् or लृट्) and प्रयोग (कर्तरि, कर्मणि, or भावे)

- If "स्य" is seen in अङ゙, it's लृट्, and if not, लट्.
- शातृ is only for कर्तरि, being परस्मैपद-प्रत्यय.
- When धातु is $P$, शानच् should be कर्मणि or भावे.
- In लट्, when धातु is A, if "य" is in अङ, शानच् should be कर्मणि or भावे, if not, कर्तरि.
- In लृट्, when धातु is A, it can be any प्रयोग.
- Note that भावे should only be in neuter singular.
d) English meaning is "the object which is being reached".

Exercise 2: Find शातृँ/रानच-ending words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. अविद्यायां वर्तमानाः सन्तः वयं बुद्यिमन्तः इति मन्यमानाः संसारे तिष्ठन्ति ।
2. देही नैव कुर्वन् न कारयन्
3. देवदत्तः ओदनं पचन्तं सोमदत्तं पइयति।
4. मोक्षम् इच्छन् सः गुरुम् एव अभिगच्छति ।
5. विषयान् ध्यायतः पुरुषस्य सङः उपजायते।
6. रिष्याः पक्षिणां गीतं शृच्वन्तः वने भ्रमन्ति ।
7. पइयन् श्रृण्वन् गच्छन् सन् सः नैव किश्चित् करोति ।
8. माता पुत्रेण लिख्यमानानि अक्षराणि पइयति।
9. सः गृहस्थैः क्रियमाणानि कर्माणि सन्न्यस्यति।
10. वने भ्रमद्भिः शिष्यैः श्रूयमाणं गीतं पक्षिणः गायन्ति ।
11. वक्ष्यमाणं प्रकरणं स्मृत्वा इदानीं आचार्यः रिाष्येभ्यः सम्बन्धं वदति ।
12. षट्पदेः पेपीयमानं पङ्कजस्य मधु।

## Note 1:

As is the case for तिङन्त्त words, undenoted कर्ता and कर्म of action of शातृँ/ शानच्-ending word are in $3^{\text {rd }}$ and $2^{\text {nd }}$ cases. They are not in $6^{\text {th }}$ case.

Note 2:
The शावृँ-ending of अस् ( 2 P to be) is सत्. The participle सत् is commonly used with an adjective and translated as "being ...". By using सत, the adjective is prevented from becoming a predicate to the main noun. In this case, the adjective used with the participle सत् becomes a reason for predication.
E.g., पुरुषः कर्मयोगी सन् कर्मणा अन्तःकरणशुद्धिं आम्योति।
(A person, being a karmayogī, gains antaḥkaraṇaśuddhi by karma.)
E.g., जनाः भक्ताः सन्तः भगवन्तं सेवन्ते ।
(People, being devotees, worship the lord.)
E.g., सरस्वती वाग्देवी सती बुद्दिम् अनुगृह्बाति ।

Sarasvatī, being a goddess of speech, blesses intellect.

Note 3:
The सत् in $7^{\text {th }}$ case in any number and gender is used in सति सप्रमी. Details are given in Volume 1.

## c. वसुँ

$\square$ "वसुँ" is an optional substitute for शातृँ when the धातु is विद्न (2P) to know.
$\square$ उँ of वसुँ is इत् By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत् ।. It indicates how the प्रातिपदिक should decline.
$\square$ विद्न + शतृ becomes विद् + वसुँ. The final form is "विद्वस्", a स-ending प्रातिपदिकम्. The meaning is "the one who is knowing".
$\square$ It declines as follows:

## विद्वस-राब्दः पुँद्लिडे

|  | एकवचनम् | द्विवचनम् | बहुवचनम् |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| प्रथमा विभक्तिः | विद्वान् | विद्वांसौ | विद्वांसः |
| द्रितीया विभक्तिः | विद्वांसम | विद्वांसौ | विदुषः |
| तृतीया विभक्तिः | विदुषा | विद्वद्भ्याम् | विद्वद्भिः |
| चतुर्थी विभक्तिः | विदुषे | विद्वद्भ्याम् | विद्वद्नभ्यः |
| पश्चमी विभक्तिः | विदुषः | विद्वद्य्याम् | विद्वद्भ्यः |
| षष्ठी विभक्तिः | विदुषः | विदुषोः | विदुषाम् |
| सप्तमी विभक्तिः | विदुषि | विदुषोः | विद्वत्सु |
| सम्बोधनम् | हे विद्वन् | हे विद्वांसौ | हे विद्वांसः |

विद्वस-राब्दः नपूंसकल्लिधें

|  | एकवचनम् | द्विवचनम | बहुवचनम् |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| प्रथमा विभक्तिः | विद्दः | विदुषी | विद्दांसि |

The forms will be the same as above in द्वितीया and सम्बोधनम. From तृतीया to सप्तमी, the forms will be the same as पुँद्लिडेने.
$\square$ In feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed. It undergoes some changes and the final form is विदुषी. It declines as an ई-ending feminine word, just like नदी.

## Topic VII - कृदन्तम् - Kṛdanta

## 5. भावे and other कारकs

$\square$ To make a new प्रातिपदिक which denotes भाव (the action itself), the following कृत-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a धातु.
a. ल्युट् denotes भाव (action itself). It can also denote करण, अधिकरण, and any कारकs
b. घज् denotes घज्-अर्थs (See below)
c. क्तिन् also denotes घज्-अर्थs (See below)
$\square$ ल्युट् is suffixed to any धातु to make $a$ प्रातिपदिक denoting the action itself (भाव). ल्युट्र is similar to the English suffix "-ing". Examples in English include "sleeping is a good remedy", "telling lies is not good", etc.
$\square$ घज् and क्तिन् etc. are suffixed only to certain धातुs in certain meanings. Similar suffixes in English are "-tion", "-ance", etc. They are to be suffixed only to certain roots in certain meanings, such as "station", "entrance", etc.

## घञु-अर्थ:

$\square$ घज्-अर्थ indicates what घज् can denote.
$\square$ घज् can denote two things:

1) भावे (action itself) (Ref. 3.3.18 भावे । ~ घज)
2) अकर्तरि कारके (any कारकs other than कर्ता) but it should be संज्ञायाम् (certain घज्-अर्थ-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to certain धातुs with specific meanings which are seen in the language. Most of them are lited as common noun in dictionaries.) (Ref. 3.3.19 अकर्तरि च कारके संज्ञायाम् ।)

## a. ल्युट्

$\square$ Of the कृतु-प्रत्ययs, the following are the 7 things to be known regarding "ल्युट्":

1) What ल्युट् denotes:

- भाव (action itself)
- करण (instrument) and अधिकरण (locus)
- Anything else is also possible by the शिष्टप्रयोग.

2) Content of ल्युट्-प्रत्यय

- यु - which is converted to "अन" by 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of ल्युट् and their function

- ल् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते।. For intonation
- ट् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।, it brings a feminine suffix ई.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्ञ

- The content of प्रत्यय is replaced by "अन" by 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।
- The न् of अन is subject to णत्व (See Volume 2 under णत्वम).
- गुण takes place on अङ्ञ (See Topic IV).

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- नपुंसकलिङ्ञ (neuter gender) when ल्युट् is in the sense of भाव.
- When ल्युट् is in the sense of करण or अधिकरण, the gender is decided according to the existing forms by the usage of learned people (शिष्टप्टयोग).

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- ल्युट्-ending words decline as अ-ending neuter, like ज्ञान. (ज्ञा + ल्युट्)

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- In भावे, other कृदन्त words which also indicate भाव will be used as an explanation. E.g., दर्शानं दृष्टिः। Both words are made of दृरा (1P) to see with भाव-अर्थ-कृत्-प्रत्ययs. The meaning of both words is "seeing, sight, vision".
- In करणे, a तिङन्त्त word with "अनेन", a $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending of इदम, is used to show that the word is used as an instrument. E.g., दृइयते अनेन इति दर्शानम् । (That by which something is seen, such as eye, is दर्रानम.)
- In अधिकरणे, a तिङन्त्त word with "अस्मिन", a $7^{\text {th }}$ case ending of इदम्, is used to show that the word is used as a locus. E.g., ज्ञायते अस्मिन् इति ज्ञानम्। (That in which something is known, such as intellect, is ज्ञानम.)
- In कर्मणि, a तिङन्त्त in कर्मणि प्रयोग is used to show that the word denotes the object. E.g., ज्ञायते इति ज्ञानम्। (That which is known is ज्ञानम.)

Example 1. Derivation of ज्ञान, a ल्युट्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) ज्ञा + ल्युट् $A$ कृतु-प्रत्यय ल्युट् is suffixed to धातु ज्ञा (to know).
2) ज्ञा + यु ल् and ट् of ल्युट् are इत letters and hence elided.
3) ज्ञा + अन By 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।, the प्रत्यय यु is replaced by अन.
4) ज्ञान सवर्णदीर्घ between अझ and प्रत्यय takes place.

Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्
Being a ल्युट्-प्रत्यय-अन्त प्रातिपदिकम, ज्ञान is a neuter word and declines as अ-ending neuter प्रातिपदिकम्. When it is भावे व्युत्पत्तिः, the meaning of ज्ञानम् is "knowing". Another word in भावे "ज्ञपिः" may be heard as an explanation. When it is कर्मणि व्युत्पत्तिः, the meaning will be "the object of knowing", and its विग्रहवाक्यम् will be "ज्ञायते इति ज्ञानम्।". In करणे व्युत्पत्तिः, the meaning is "the means of knowledge" and the विग्रहवाक्यम् is "ज्ञायते अनेन इति ज्ञानम्।".

Example 2. Derivation of करण, a ल्युट्-पत्यय-अन्त word:

1) कृ + ल्युट् A कृत-प्रत्यय ल्युट् is suffixed to धातु कृ (to do).
2) कृ + यु ल् and ट् of ल्युट् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) कृ + अन By 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।, the प्रत्यय यु is replaced by अन.
4) कर् + अन गुण of ॠ $\begin{aligned} & \text { is अ, which should be followed by र्. }\end{aligned}$
5) कर् + अण By णत्व sandhi rule, the न् of अन is replaced by ण् because of र्.
6) करण Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

विग्रहवाक्य for करण can be "कृतिः इति करणम्". Another प्रत्यय which is in भावे is used with the same धातु. The meaning of both words is "action". In this case it is भावे व्युत्पत्तिः.

करण can also be "instrument of doing". In this case, विग्रहवाक्य will be "क्रियते अनेन इति करणम्". This is called करणे व्युत्पत्तिः.

Example 3. Derivation of श्रवण, a ल्युट्-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) श्रु + ल्युट्

A कृतु-प्रत्यय ल्युट् is suffixed to धातु श्रु (to hear).
By the addition of the suffix, श्रु is qualified to be an अङ.
2) श्रु + यु

ल् and ट् of ल्युट् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) श्रु + अन

By 7.1.1 युवोरनाकौ।, the प्रत्यय यु is replaced by अन.
4) श्रो + अन

ल्युट् can cause गुण in the अङ. गुण of उ is ओ.
5) श्रव् + अन

By अयवायाव sandhi rule, the ओ followed by vowel becomes अवा.
6) श्रव् + अण By णत्व sandhi rule, the न् of अन is replaced by ण् because of र्.
7) श्रवण Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Being a ल्युट्-पत्यय-अन्त प्रातिपदिकम, श्रवण is a neuter word and declines as अ-ending neuter प्रातिपदिकम्. विग्रहवाक्य for श्रवण is "act of hearing", or "श्रुतिः इति श्रवणम्", when it is भावे व्युत्पत्तिः.

Here are more examples of ल्युट्-ending words:
धातु:
New प्रातिपदिकम (विग्रहवाक्यम is given for some words.)

| प्र + आप् (5P) to gain | + ल्युट् = | प्रापण (gaining) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| आस (2A) to sit | + ल्युट् $=$ | आसन (sitting, seat) |
| उप + आस् ( 2 A ) to sit near | + ल्युट् $=$ | उपासन (sitting near) |
| अधि + इ(ङ्) (2A) to study | + ल्युट् $=$ | अध्ययन (study) |
| जन (4A) to be born | + ल्युट् $=$ | जनन (birth) |
| बन्ध् (9P) to bind | + ल्युट् $=$ | बन्धन (binding, a rope for tying, "बभाति अनेन") |
| मन, (4A) to think | + ल्युट् $=$ | मनन (thinking) |
| प्र + मा (2P) to know | + ल्युट् $=$ | प्रमाण (means of knowledge, measure "मीयते अनेन") |
| वच् (2P) to say | + ल्युट् $=$ | वचन (speaking, statement, "उच्यते इति") |
| वन्दू (1A) to salute | + ल्युट् $=$ | वन्दन (reverence) |
| सह् (1A) to endure | + ल्युट् $=$ | सहन (endurance) |
| सम + आ + धा (3U) to solve | + ल्युट् = | समाधान (resolution, reconciliation "समाधीयते अनेन") |
| स्था (1P) to stay | + ल्युट् = | स्थान (staying, place of staying, "तिष्ठति अस्मिन् इति") |
| नि + दिध्यास to contemplate | + ल्युट् = | निदिध्यासन (contemplation) |

धातु:
इष् (6P) to desire
दृरा (1P) to see पुष् (4P) to nourish
भुज् (7U) to eat
मुच् (6U) to set free कृ (8U) to do

प्र + कृ (8U) to express
मृ (6A) to die
स्मृ (1P) to remember
उद्न + आ + हृ (1U) to cite
श्रु (1P) to hear
भू (1P) to be
ध्यै (1P) to meditate

+ ल्युट् $=$ एषण (desire)
+ ल्युट् = दर्शान (seeing)
+ ल्युट् = पोषण (nourishing)
+ ल्युट् = भोजन (eating)
+ ल्युट् = मोचन (setting free)
+ ल्युट् = करण (doing, instrument "क्कियते अनेन इति")
+ ल्युट् $=\quad$ प्रकरण (topic)
+ ल्युट् = मरण (death)
+ ल्युट् $=$ स्मरण (act of remembering)
+ ल्युट् = उदाहरण (citing, example, "उदााह्टियते अनेन इति")
+ ल्युट् = श्रवण (hearing)
+ ल्युट् = भवन (birth, place of abode "भवति अस्मिन् इति")
+ ल्युट् = ध्यान (meditation)


## Exercise 1:

Give the information on व्युत्पत्ति of the following ल्युट्-ending words according to the meanings given in English. Answer in the format in the example.

1. आसनम (place of sitting)
2. बन्धनम् (means to tie)
3. ज्ञानम (object of knowing)
4. ज्ञानम् (means of knowing)
5. वचनम (what is said, object of saying)
6. स्थानम् (place of staying)
7. उदाहरणम् (illustration, by which something is illustrated)
8. भवनम् (place of abode)

## Example answer to 1:

The व्युत्पत्ति of आसनम् (place of sitting) is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is आस् (to sit)
c) The कृत-प्रत्यय is ल्युट्.
d) From the translation the suffix is understood to be denoting अधिकरण, the location of आस्. Thus, this is अधिकरणे व्युत्पत्तिः.
e) विग्रहवाक्य will be "आस्ते अस्मिन् इति आसनम".

Exercise 2: Find ल्युट्-ending words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, give विग्रह्ववाक्य for ल्युट्-ending कृद्दृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. सर्वेषां दुःखानां सहनम् इष्यते।
2. भगवतः दर्शानाय तपः तप्यते।
3. देवदत्तः आचार्यात् ब््मणः ज्ञानम् लभते।
4. जननं मरणं रारीराणामेव न तु जीवानाम्।
5. तव वचनस्य श्रवणं करोमि ।
6. गुरूणां वन्दनं कृत्वा अध्ययनस्य आरम्भं करिष्यामः 1
7. यत् स्थानम् एकेः प्राप्यते तत् अन्यैः अपि गम्यते।

Note:

- Instead of $3^{\text {rd }}$ and $2^{\text {nd }}$, undenoted कर्ता and कर्म of the actions of ल्युट्-ending words take $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending (षष्ठी विभक्तिः)
- They are called कर्तरि षष्ठी and कर्मणि षष्ठी respectively.


## b. घज्

Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "घज्":

1) What घज् denotes:

- घजर्थ i.e., भाव (action itself) and any कारक other than कर्ता

2) Content of घज-प्रत्यय

- अ

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of घज् and their function

- घ् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्विते।. च/ज् at the end of अङ्ञ becomes कवर्ग, which is क्/ग्.
- ज् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. The suffix can cause वृद्दि in अङ (See Topic IV)

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- गुण and वृद्दि can take place on अङ्ञ (See Topic IV)..

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- All घज-ending words become पुँद्लिङ.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- घज्-ending word declines as अ-ending masculine, like राम. (राम is a घज-ending word.)

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- In भावे, other कृदन्त word which also indicates भाव will be used as an explanation. E.g., पठनम् इति पाठः । Both words are made of पठ् (1P) to study with भाव-अर्थ-कृत्प्रत्ययs. The meaning of both words is "study".
- In कर्मणि, a तिङन्त्त word in कर्मणि प्रयोग, or other कृदन्त word which indicates कर्म will be used. E.g., लोक्यते इति लोकः। What is experienced is लोकः. This is कर्मणि व्युत्पत्तिः.
- In करणे, a तिङन्त्त word with "अनेन/येन", a $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending of इद्नम/यद् in masculine, is used to show that the word is used as an instrument.
E.g., पठ्यते अनेन इति पाठः । (By which a thing is read is पाठः.) This is करणे व्युत्पत्तिः.
- In अपादाने, "अस्मात/यस्मात्" word is used with a तिङन्त्त. This is अपादाने व्युत्पत्तिः. E.g., आहरन्ति रसं यस्मात् इति आहारः। (From which people take essence is आहारः)
- In अधिकरणे, "अस्मिन/यस्मिन्" word is used with a तिङन्त्त.
E.g., रमन्ते अस्मिन् इति रामः। (In which people revel is रामः) This is अधिकरणे व्युत्पत्तिः.

Example 1. Derivation of राम, a घज-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) रम् + घज् A कृत्-प्रत्यय घजू is suffixed to धातु रम (to revel). By the addition of the suffix, रम् is qualified to be an अझ्ग.
2) रम् + अ घ् and ज् of घज् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) राम् + अ Because घज् is a जित्-प्रत्यय, there is a वृद्दि change on the penultimate short अ.
4) राम Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Being a घज-प्रत्यय-अन्त प्रातिपदिकम, राम is a masculine word and declines as अ-ending masculine.

Example 2. Derivation of त्याग, a घन-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) त्यज् + घज् A कृतू-प्रत्यय घज् is suffixed to धातु त्यज् (to give up). By the addition of the suffix, त्यज़ is qualified to be an अझ्ञ.
2) त्यज् + अ घ् and ज् of घज् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) त्याज् + अ Because घज् is a जित्-प्रत्यय, there is a वृद्धि change on the penultimate short अ.
4) त्याग् + अ Because घज् is a घित-प्रत्यय, the last ज़ is replaced by कवर्ग, that is ग.
5) त्याग Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

विग्रहवाक्य for त्याग can be "त्यजनं हानम् इति त्यागः". Another प्रत्यय which is in भावे is used with the same धातु and with another धातु in the same meaning. All mean "giving up, renunciation".

Example 3. Derivation of योग, $a$ घज-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) युज् + घज् $A$ कृत्-प्रत्यय घज् is suffixed to धातु युज् (to give up).

By the addition of the suffix, युज् is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) युज् + अ घ् and ज् of घज् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) योज् + अ Because युज् does not have इक् at the end or a penultimate $अ$, there is a गुण change on the penultimate short इक्.
4) योग् + अ Because घज् is a घित-प्रत्यय, the last ज् is replaced by कवर्ग, that is ग्.
5) योग Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be $a$ प्रातिपदिकम्

Here are more examples of घज-ending words:

## धातु:

अधि + अस् (4P) to attribute falsely
सम् + नि + अस् (4P) to give up
नइा (4P) to perish
लम् (1A) to obtain
त्यजे (1P) to give up
भिद्न (7P) to separate
उप + दिशा (6P) to instruct
निर् + दिशा (6P) to indicate
भुज् (7U) to eat
युज् (7U) to unite
बुध् (1P) to know
दुह् (2P) to milk
अधि + इ (2A) to study
अभि + प्र + इ (2P) to intend
भू (1P) to be
आ + हृ (1U) to bring
वि + अव + हृ (1U) to deal with
उप + सम् + हृ (1U) to conclude
अधि + कृ (8U) to authorize

+ घज् $=$
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् $=$
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =
+ घज् =

New प्रातिपदिकम्
अध्यास (superimposition)
सन्न्यास (renunciation)
नाइा (being lost, destruction)
लाभ (obtaining, acquisition)
त्याग (renunciation)
भेद् (division)
उपदेशा (teaching)
निर्देशा (description)
भोग (experience, object of experience)
योग (application, means)
बोध (knowledge)
दोह (milking)
अध्याय (chapter)
अभिप्राय (intention)
भाव (existence)
आहार (food)
व्यवहार (activity, transaction)
उपसंहार (summarizing, withdrawing)
अधिकार (domain, topic)

## Exercise 1:

Give the information on व्युत्पत्ति of the following घज्-ending words according to the meanings given in English. Answer in the format in the example.

1. लोकः (object of experience)
2. भोगः (object of enjoyment)
3. पाठः (text of a book)
4. पाठः (method of reciting)
5. विभागः (partition, by which something is divided)
6. आहारः (from which people take nutrition)
7. आरामः (garden, place of pleasure, in which people take rest)

Example answer to 1:
The व्युत्पत्ति of लोकः is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is लोक् (to experience)
c) The कृत-प्रत्यय is घज्.
d) From the translation the suffix is understood to be denoting कर्म, the object of लोक्.

Thus, this is कर्मणि व्युत्पत्तिः
e) विग्रहवाक्य will be "लोक्यते इति लोकः".

Exercise 2: Find घज्-ending words, identify their धातुs and प्रत्ययs, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. तत्त्वस्य बोधः उपदिइयते।
2. एतस्य प्रकरणस्य उपसंहारः कर्तव्यः।
3. तस्मिन् काले घटस्य नाइाः न उपपद्यते।
4. भोगस्य त्यागेन एव इदं लभ्यते।

Note that कर्ता and कर्म of action of घज्-ending word are in $6^{\text {th }}$ case. Instead of $3^{\text {rd }}$ and $2^{\text {nd }}$, undenoted कर्ता and कर्म of action of घज़-ending word take $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending (षष्ठी विभक्तिः) They are called कर्तरि षष्ठी and कर्मणि षष्ठी respectively.

## c. क्तिन्

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "क्तिन्":

1) What क्तिन् denotes:

- घजर्थ i.e., भाव (action itself) and any कारक other than कर्ता

2) Content of क्तिन-प्रत्यय

- ति

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of क्तिन् and their function

- क् - By 1.3.8 लराकतद्धिते।. निषेध (prohibition) of गुण and वृद्दि on अङ.
- न्- By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. For intonation

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्ञ

- No गुण or वृद्दि happens in अङ. Some consonant sandhi may apply.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- All क्तिन-ending words become स्रीलिझ्झ (feminine gender).

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- क्तिन-ending word declines as इ-ending feminine, like मति. (मति is a क्तिन-ending word.)

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- In भावे, another कृदन्त word which also indicates भाव will be used as an explanation. E.g., स्तवनं स्तुतिः । Both words are made of स्तु (2P) to praise with भाव-अर्थ-कृत्-प्रत्ययs. The meaning of both words is "praise".
- In कर्मणि, a तिङन्त्त word in कर्मणि प्रयोग, or another कृद्न word which indicates कर्म will be used. E.g., सृज्यते इति सृष्टिः। (What is created is सृष्टि:.) This is called कर्मणिव्युत्पत्तिः.
- In करणे, a तिङन्त्त word with "अनया/यया", a $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending of इदम//यद्न in feminine (because क्तिन-ending word is feminine), is used to show that the word is used as an instrument.
E.g., स्तूयते अनया इति स्तुतिः । (By which something is praised is स्तुतिः, such as स्तोत्रं, सूक्तम, etc.)

Example 1. Derivation of शाक्ति, a क्तिन-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) शक् + क्तिन् A कृत-प्रत्यय क्तिन् is suffixed to the धातु राक् (to be able). By the addition of the suffix, राक् is qualified to be an अङ.
2) शाक् + ति क् and न् of क्तिन् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) शाक्ति Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Being a क्तिन् -प्रत्यय-अन्त्र प्रातिपदिकम, शाक्ति is a feminine word and declines as इ-ending feminine प्रातिपदिकम, like मति.

Example 2. Derivation of भक्ति, a क्तिन--पत्यय-अन्त word:

1) भज् + क्तिन् A कृत्-प्रत्यय क्तिन् is suffixed to the धातु भज् (to worship). By the addition of the suffix, भज् is qualified to be an अङ्.
2) भज् + ति क् and न् of क्तिन् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) भग् + ति By 8.2.30 चोः कुः।, the चवर्ग immediately followed by झल, is replaced by कवर्ग. In this case ज् (चवर्ग) is immediately followed by त् (झल्र), thus replaced by ग् (कवर्ग).
4) भक् + ति By 8.4.55 खरि च।, the झल् immediately followed by खर्, is replaced by चर्. In this case ग् (झल्ड) is immediately followed by त् (खऱ), and thus is replaced by क (चर्).
5) भक्ति Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

विग्रहवाक्य for भक्ति can be "भजनम इति भक्तिः". Another प्रत्यय which is in भावे is used with the same धातु and with another धातु in the same meaning. The meaning of both words is "worship, devotion".

Example 3. Derivation of बुद्धि, a क्तिन-प्रत्यय-अन्त word:

1) बुध् + क्तिन् A कृत्-प्रत्यय क्तिन् is suffixed to the धातु बुध् (to know).

By the addition of the suffix, बुध् is qualified to be an अङ्भ.
2) बुध् + ति
3) बुध् + धि
4) बुद्स + धि

क् and न् of क्तिन are इत letters and hence elided.
Being a कित, क्तिन् does not cause गुण in the अङ.
By 8.2.40 झषस्तथोर्धोऽघः।, त/थ् immediately preceded by झष् is replaced by ध. Thus the त् after ध् of बुध् is replaced by ध. By 8.4.53 झलां जइा झशि। ।ल् immediately followed by झइा is replaced by जशा. Thus the ध् (झल్య) of बुध् followed by ध् (झशा) of धि is replaced by द् (जइा).
5) बुद्दि Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्

Here are more examples of क्तिन-ending words:

| धातुः |  | New प्रातिपदिकम |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| शाक् $(5 \mathrm{P})$ to be able | + क्तिन् $=$ | शाक्ति (ability) |
| प्र + आप् $(5 \mathrm{P})$ to gain | + क्तिन $=$ | प्राप्ति (gain) |
| श्रु (1P) to hear | + क्तिन् $=$ | श्रुति (hearing, what is heard, means of hearing) |
| स्मृ $(1 \mathrm{P})$ to remember | + क्तिन् $=$ | स्मृति (memory, what is remembered by teachers) |
| आ+ कृ $(8 \mathrm{U})$ to bring near | + क्तिन् $=$ | आकृति (form) |

* The last letter of the following धातुs take कुत्वम, and चर्त्वम when applicable.

मुच् (6U) to set free + क्तिन् $=\quad$ मुक्ति (liberation)
भुज् (7U) to eat + क्तिन् $=$ भुक्ति (eating, food)
भज् (7U) to worship + क्तिन् $=\quad$ भक्ति (worship)
वि + भज् (7U) to divide + क्तिन् $=$ विभक्ति (division)

* The last nasal letter of the following धातुs is elided.

| मन् $(4 \mathrm{~A})$ to consider | + क्तिन $=$ | मति (thought, mind) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| रम् $(1 \mathrm{~A})$ to rejoice | + क्तिन $=$ | रति (pleasure) |
| गम् $(1 \mathrm{P})$ to go | + क्तिन् $=$ | गति (going, end, path) |

धातु:

* With the following धातुs, "त" of क्तिन becomes "ध" and the last letter of the धातु becomes जरा. शुध् (4P) to purify + क्तिन् $=$ शुद्धि (purity, purification)
सिध् (4P) to be successful + क्तिन् = सिद्धि (success)
बुध् (1P) to know + क्तिन् $=$ बुद्दि (intellect, thought)
उप+ लभ् (1A) to perceive + क्तिन् $=$ उपलब्धि (perception)
* With the following धातुs, the last letter of the धातु becomes "ष", and "त" of क्तिन becomes "ट".

दृरा (1P) to see $\quad+$ क्तिन् $=$ दृष्टि (sight, eye)
सृज् (6P) to create $\quad+$ क्तिन $=\quad$ सृष्टि (creation, what is created)
यज् (1U) to worship + क्तिन् $=\quad$ इष्टि (sacrifice)

* Other irregular forms

राम् (4P) to be tranquil + क्तिन् $=$ शान्ति (tranquillity)
स्था (1P) to stay $\quad+$ क्तिन् $=$ स्थिति (remaining)
वच् (2P) to say $\quad+$ क्तिन् $=\quad$ उक्ति (sentence, expression)

## Exercise 1:

Give the information on व्युत्पत्ति of the following क्तिन-ending words according to the meanings given in English. Answer in the format in the example.

1. श्रुतिः (object of hearing, what is heard, the Veda)
2. श्रुतिः (instrument of hearing, ear)
3. दृष्टिः (instrument of seeing, eye)
4. बुद्दि: (thought, object of thinking)
5. मतिः (object of thinking, opinion)
6. मतिः (instrument of thinking, the mind)
7. गतिः (object of going, destination, end)
8. गतिः (means of going, path, way)

## Example answer to 1:

The व्युत्पत्ति of श्रुतिः (object of hearing, what is heard, the Veda) is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is श्रु (to hear)
c) The कृत्प-प्रत्यय is क्तिन्.
d) From the translation, the suffix is understood to be denoting कर्म, the object of श्रु. Thus, this is कर्मणि व्युत्पत्तिः.
e) विग्रहवाक्य will be "श्रूयते इति श्रुतिः".

Exercise 2: Find क्तिन-ending words, identify their धातुs, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. अप्राप्तस्य प्राप्तिः अत्र योगः उच्चते।
2. अस्मिन् विषये मुनीनाम् अनेकाः मतयः सन्ति ।
3. जनानां भुक्तिं मुक्तिं च गुरुः ददाति।
4. श्रद्धया उपेतः यतिः सिद्दिम् अप्राप्य कां गतिं गच्छति ।
5. देवदत्तस्य दृष्ष्या घटस्य उपलब्धिः न अस्ति।
6. अन्तःकरणस्य शुद्दये एतानि कर्माणि उक्तानि।
7. श्रुति-स्मृतिभ्यां युक्तेः च एतत् सूक्तम् इति अवगम्यते ।
8. विभक्तेः अर्थः राङ्यते।
9. वस्तूनाम् उपलब्धिः बुद्दौौ विद्यते।
10. तेषां गतौ विघः न विद्यते।
11. एतस्मिन् विषये मनसः स्थितिः अस्ति।
12. भत्त्या दत्तानि पुष्पाणि गृह्रातु।

Note:

- The कर्ता and the कर्म of action of क्तिन-ending words are in $6^{\text {th }}$ case.
- Instead of $3^{\text {rd }}$ and $2^{\text {nd }}$, undenoted कर्ता and कर्म of the actions of क्तिन्-ending words take $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending (षष्ठी विभक्तिः)
- They are called कर्तरि षष्ठी and कर्मणि षष्ठी respectively.


## 6. कृतु-प्रत्ययs to make अव्ययs

To make a new प्रातिपदिक which is treated as अव्यय (indeclinable), the following कृत्-प्पत्ययs are suffixed to a धातु.
a. क्त्वा denotes a previous action when there are two actions done by the same agent. e.g., ज्ञा (to know) + कत्वा = ज्ञात्वा (having known)
b. ल्यप् is a substitute for क्त्वा when the धातु comes along with उपसर्ग.
e.g., परि + ईक्ष (to examine) + ल्यप् $=$ परीक्ष्य (having examined)
c. तुमुन् denotes the action itself to make an infinitive form of the धातु.
e.g., ज्ञा (to know) + तुमुन = ज्ञातुम (to know)

## What is अव्यय ?

$\square$ Some प्रातिपदिकs are given a technical term "अव्ययम्" in Pāṇini-sūtras.
$\square$ क्त्वा and तुमुन ending प्रातिपदिकs are defined as अव्ययम् in Pāṇini-sūtra 1.1.40 and 1.1.39.
$\square$ Being a substitute for क्त्वा, ल्यप-ending प्रातिपदिकs are also treated as अव्यय.
$\square$ Even after getting अव्यय-संज्ञा (technical term which is "अव्ययम"), being a प्रातिपदिक, a सुप्प्रत्यय is suffixed so that it makes the अव्यय a पद्म, a word that can be used in the language, as told by 1.4.14 सुप्तिङन्तं पद्म् ।.
$\square$ Any सुप--प्रत्यय suffixed to an अव्यय should be elided, in other words, it should become invisible. (This rule is enjoined by Pāṇini-sūtra 2.4.82.) Even after elision, the status of being सुबन्त (that which ends with सुप-प्रत्यय) is retained, so that the word can be used in the language.
$\square$ Because of the elision of सुप--प्रत्यय, for a प्रातिपदिक that is deemed अव्यय-संज्ञा, declension is as though not there. This is the reason for the name "indeclinable".

## a. कत्वा

$\square$ Of the कृत्-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "क्त्वा":

1) What क्त्वा denotes:

- A previous action when there are two actions done by the same agent. For example, "having done action A , he does action B ", the action A takes कत्वा.

2) Content of क्त्वा-प्रत्यय

- त्वा

3) इत् (indicatory) letter of क्त्वा and its function

- क् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्धिते। निषेध (prohibition) of गुण and वृद्यि in अङ

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- No गुण.

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- As क्त्वा ending प्रातिपदिक denotes the action, it does not have gender.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, the new प्रातिपदिक does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृतु-वृत्तिः

- Since this कृतु-वृत्ति is easily understandable, विग्रहवाक्यs are not commonly seen.

To make a sentence "having done action A, he does action B", क्त्वा प्रत्यय is suffixed after a धातु indicating action A .

For example, in the sentence "Having known the meaning, he writes the verses," two actions belong to the same कर्ता. "Knowing the meaning" happens prior to "writing the verses." Thus क्त्वा प्रत्यय is suffixed to a धातु indicating "to know."

To make a word whose meaning is "having known":

1) ज्ञा + क्त्वा A कृत्-पत्यय त्त्वा is suffixed to the धातु ज्ञा (to know).

By the addition of the suffix, ज्ञा is qualified to be an अङ.
2) ज्ञा + त्वा क of क्त्वा is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) ज्ञात्वा Being कृदन्त, that is a प्रातिपदिकम्

Also, being a क्त्वा ending word, it is an अव्ययम्.
Only after getting the status of पद, a word is qualified to be used in a Sanskrit language. In order to become a पद, being a प्रातिपदिक, सुपू-प्रत्यय must be suffixed to ज्ञात्वा. Since any सुप-प्रत्यय after an अव्यय has to be elided (become invisible) by grammar rule, अव्यय words as though do not decline, keeping the same form.

क्त्वा can take इट्-आगम when the धातु is सेट्. पठ् (to study) is a सेट् धातु. To make a word whose meaning is "having studied":

1) पठ् + क्त्वा A कृत-प्रत्यय त्तवा is suffixed to the धातु पठ् (to study).

By the addition of the suffix, पठ् is qualified to be an अझ्ग.
2) पठ् + त्वा क् of क्त्वा is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) पठ् + इत्वा Because पठ् is a सेट् धातु, इट्-आगम is attached to त्वा.
4) पठित्वा Being कृदन्त, this is a प्रातिपदिकम.

The क्त्वा ending word is an अव्ययम.

Here are more examples of क्त्वा -ending words:

| धातु: |  | New प्रातिपदिकम |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| कृ (8U) to do | + क्त्वा $=$ | कृत्वा (having done) |
| ज्ञा (9P) to know | + कत्वा $=$ | ज्ञात्वा (having known) |
| श्रु (5P) to hear | + क्त्वा $=$ | श्रुत्वा (having heard) |
| पठ् (1P) to study | + क्त्वा $=$ | पठित्वा (having studied) |
| विद् (2P) to know | + कत्वा $=$ | विद्वित्वा (having known) |
| गम (1P) to go | + क्त्वा $=$ | गत्वा (having gone) |
| नम (1P) to salute | + कत्वा $=$ | नत्वा (having saluted) |
| हन् (2P) to injure | + क्त्वा $=$ | हत्वा (having injured) |
| त्यजे (1P) to give up | + क्त्वा $=$ | त्यक्त्वा (having given up) |
| भुज् (7U) to eat | + क्त्वा $=$ | भुक्त्वा (having eaten, experienced) |
| मुच् (6P) to set free | + क्त्वा $=$ | मुक्त्वा (having released) |
| दृरा (1P) to see | + कत्वा $=$ | दृ्वा (having seen) |
| वच् (2P) to say | + कत्वा $=$ | उक्त्वा (having said) |
| स्था (1P) to stay | + क्त्वा $=$ | स्थित्वा (having been there) |
| दा (3U) to give | + कत्वा $=$ | दत्त्वा (having given) |
| लभ् (1A) to gain | + कत्वा $=$ | लब्ध्वा (having gained) |
| बुध् (1P) to know | + कत्वा $=$ | बुद्धा (having known) |

Exercise 1: Find क्त्वा-ending words, identify their धातुs, and separate the words belonging to the क्त्वा-ending word from the words belonging to the तिङन्त्त word.

1. स्रानं कृत्वा पुत्रःः मन्दिरं गच्छन्ति।
2. गुरूपदेरोन अर्थं ज्ञात्वा रिष्यः तुष्यति।
3. उपनिषदं श्रुत्वा देवदत्तः गृहात् निर्गच्छति।
4. श्लोकान् पठित्वा सोमदत्तः तान् लिखति ।
5. तत्वं विदित्वा पुरुषः न मुद्यति।
6. जीवाः तत् गत्वा न निवर्तन्ते।
7. सरस्वरीं देवीं नत्वा पठामः।
8. तान् हत्वा न जिजीविषामि।
9. फलं भुक्त्वा पुनः मनुष्यलोकं प्रविशान्ति।
10. सिन्धुं दृष्ध्वा सः सेतुं तरति ।
11. इदें वाक्यम् उक्त्वा सः तूष्ण्णीं बभूव।
12. आतिथये धनं दत्त्वा नृपतिः तं नमति ।
13. गुरोः अनुग्रहं लब्ध्वा सः शास्ं पठति ।
14. कारणं बुद्धा कविः कार्यम् अपि जानाति ।

## b. ल्यप

ल्यपू is the substitute for क्त्वा when the धातु takes an उपसर्ग or other elements related to the धातु. Thus ल्यप् is treated in the same manner as क्त्वा-प्रत्यय.

When क्त्वा-ending word is compounded with नज, a negative particle, क्त्वा is not substituted by ल्यपे. E.g., अकृत्वा (not having done), अविदित्वा (not having known)
$\square$ The only differences from क्त्वा-प्रत्यय are the following:
2) Content of ल्यप्

- य

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of ल्यप् and their function

- ल् - By 1.3.8 लराक्कतद्यिते।. For intonation
- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. When the धातु ends with a short vowel, त् is attached to the धातु.
$\square$ ल्यप-प्रत्यय-ending words are commonly called ल्यबन्त, that which ends with ल्यप. The प्र is replaced by ब् by a sandhi rule.

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "having experienced":

1) अनु + भू + कत्वा A कृत्-प्रत्यय क्त्वा is suffixed to the धातु भू, which is prefixed by उपसर्ग "अनु", giving the meaning "to experience".

By the addition of the suffix, भू is qualified to be an अङ.
2) अनु + भू + ल्यप् Because the धातु is prefixed by उपसर्ग, the क्त्वा is replaced by ल्यप.
3) अनु + भू + य ू and प् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) अनुभूय Being a substitute of क्त्वा, ल्यप् functions as क्त्वा, that is: गुण change does not take place, and ल्यबन्त word is also कृदन्त. Thus प्रातिपदिक status is acquired. Just like क्त्वा-ending word, ल्यबन्त is an अव्यय.

ल्यप् is a पित, that which has प् as इत् letter. When a short vowel ending धातु is suffixed by पित् कृत् प्रत्यय, त् is added after the धातु by 6.1.71 ह्स्वस्य पिति कृति तुक् ।. For example, to make a word whose meaning is "having followed":

1) अनु + सृ + क्त्वा A कृतु-प्रत्यय क्त्वा is suffixed to the धातु सृ prefixed by उपसर्ग अनु, giving the meaning "to follow".

By the addition of the suffix, सृ is qualified to be an अङ.
2) अनु + सृ + ल्यप् Because the धातु is prefixed by उपसर्ग, the क्त्वा is replaced by ल्यप्.
3) अनु + सृ + य ल् and प् are इत् letters and hence elided.
4) अनु + सृ + त् + य ल्यप् being a पित् कृत्-प्रत्यय, by 6.1 .71 हस्वस्य पिति कृति तुक।, तुक्-आगम (the $_{\text {t }}$ content is त) is attached at the end of the धातु.
5) अनुसृत्य Just as क्त्वा-ending word, ल्यबन्त word is also a प्रातिपदिक and अव्यय.

Here are more examples of ल्यप्-ending (ल्यबन्त) words:

धातु:
प्र + आप् (5P) to gain
परि + ईक्ष (5P) to examine
उप + सम् + कम् (5P) to step
अव + गम् (1P) to understand
उप + गम् (1P) to approach
प + नम (1P) to salute
परि + त्यज् (1P) to give up
वि + मुच् (6U) to set free
वि + ज्ञा (9P) to know
अनु + स्था (1P) to perform
वि + हा (3P) to give up

New प्रातिपदिकम

+ ल्यप् $=$
प्राप्य (having gained)
+ ल्यप् $=$ परीक्ष्य (having examined)
+ ल्यप् $=\quad$ उपसंकम्य (having gone to the other side)
+ ल्यप् $=\quad$ अवगम्य (having understood)
+ ल्यप् $=$ उपगम्य (having approached)
+ ल्यप् $=$ प्रणम्य (having saluted)
+ ल्यप् $=\quad$ परित्यज्य (having given up totally)
+ ल्यप् $=$ विमुच्य (having set free)
+ ल्यप् $=$ विज्ञाय (having known)
+ ल्यप् $=$
+ ल्यप् $=$

अनुष्ठाय (having performed)
विहाय (having given up)

In the following list all the धातुs end with a short vowel (हह्व्व). Because कृत्-प्रत्ययs which are पित् cause "त" to be added after the धातु, ल्यप् which is पित् and a substitute for कृत्र्पत्यय, causes "त्" to be added after the धातु.

| धातुः |  | New प्रातिपदिकम |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| अधि + इ(ङ्) $(2 \mathrm{~A})$ to study | + ल्यप् $=$ | अधीत्य (having studied) |
| प्र + इ(ग) $(2 \mathrm{P})$ to depart | + ल्यप् $=$ | प्रेत्य (having departed) |
| अधि + कृ (8U) to refer to | + ल्यप् = | अधिकृत्य (having referred to) |
| वि + स्म्म (1P) to forget | + ल्यप् = | विस्मृत्य (having forgotten) |
| आङ् + श्रि (1U) to seek refuge | + ल्यप् = | आश्रित्य (having sought refuge) |
| प्र + स्तु (2U) to begin | + ल्यप् = | प्रस्तुत्य (having begun) |
| उप + सम् + हृ (1U) to sum up | + ल्यप् = | उपसंहृत्य (having summed up) |

Exercise 1: Find ल्यबन्त words, identify उपसर्ग, धातु, and separate the words belonging to the ल्यबन्त word from the words belonging to the तिङन्त्त word.

1. सर्वान् लोकान् परीक्ष्य व्राह्मणः वैराग्यम् आम्नोति ।
2. विद्यावन्तम् उपगम्य विद्यार्थिनः सेवां कुर्वन्ति।
3. रिरसा मनसा च देवं प्रणम्य सः जपति ।
4. सर्वान् बन्धून् परित्यज्य सः वने वसति ।
5. पक्षिणं विमुच्य देवदत्तः तरोः मूले तिष्ठति ।
6. कर्माणि अनुष्ठाय पुरुषः अधिकारित्वं लभते।
7. इारीराणि विहाय अन्यानि इारीराणि विन्दन्ति।
8. सर्वान् वेदान् अधीत्य पुत्रः ग्रामं प्रत्यागच्छति ।
9. अस्मात् लोकात् प्रेत्य अन्यं लोकं प्राम्रोति ।
10. श्लोकान् विस्मृत्य देवदत्तः तान् न वद़ति ।
11. भगवन्तम् आश्रित्य जनाः जीवन्ति ।
12. तद्न विज्ञाय भृगुः पितरम् उपसरति।
13. अस्मिन् ग्रन्थे एकं प्रकरणम् उपसंहृत्य अन्यत् प्रकरणं प्रस्तुत्य आचार्यः सर्वाः राङ्काः बाधते ।
c. तुमुन्
$\square$ Of the कृत-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "तुमुन":
1) What तुमुन् denotes:

- भाव (the meaning of the धातु)

2) Content of तुमुन-प्रत्यय

- तुम

3) इत् (indicatory) letters of तुमुन and their function

- उ-उच्चारणार्थक: (just to facilitate the pronunciation, thus this is not इत् letter.)
- न्- By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. For intonation

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- इट्-आगम can come. (See Topic V)
- गुण can take place. (See Topic IV)

5) Gender of the new प्रातिपदिक

- तुमुन-ending प्रातिपदिक is treated as अव्यय. Since तुमुन् denotes भाव, the action itself, and भाव does not have gender, there is no gender for तुमुन-ending words.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, the तुमुन-ending प्रातिपदिक does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the कृत्-वृत्तिः

- Since this कृत-वृत्ति is easily understandable, विग्रहवाक्यs are not commonly seen.
$\square$ तुमुन is suffixed to a धातु when:
A) There is another action which is for the sake of action of the धातु.
E.g., देवदत्तः सोमदत्तं द्रष्टुं ग्रामं गच्छति। (Devadatta goes to the village to see Somadatta.) Here, action of going is for the sake of action of seeing, to which तुमुन is suffixed.
B) There is a word indicating desire which is connected to action of the धातु.
E.g., अहं ते ऐश्वरं रूपं द्रष्टुम् इच्छामि । (I want to see your lord form.)

Here, the word इच्छामि is connected to action of seeing, to which तुमुन् is suffixed.
C) There is a word made of शाक् (to be able), अर्ह् (to be entitled), etc. which is connected to action of the धातु.
E.g., अहम् अवस्थातुं न राक्कोमि । (I am not able to stand.)

त्वम् एवं झोचितुं न अर्हसि (You are not entitled to grieve in this manner.)
Here, the word राक्रोमि and अर्हसि are connected to action of standing and grieving, to which तुमुन is suffixed.

For example, to make a new प्रातिपदिक which is an infinitive form of a धातु श्रु (to hear):

1) श्रु + तुमुन् A कृत्-प्रत्यय तुमुनू is suffixed to the धातु श्रु (to hear).

By the addition of the suffix, श्रु is qualified to be an अङ्ञ.
2) श्रु + तुम् न् of तुमुन is इत letter and hence elided. उ is just for pronunciation.
3) श्रो + तुम् तुमुन causes गुण to its अङ. (See Topic IV page 17)
4) श्रोतुम् Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

तुमुन ending word is an अव्ययम.
Only after getting the status of पद, a word is qualified to be used in a Sanskrit language. In order to become a पद, being a प्रातिपदिक, सुप-प्रत्यय is suffixed to श्रोतुम्. Since any सुपू-प्रत्यय after an अव्यय has to be elided (become invisible) by grammar rule, अव्यय word as though does not decline, keeping the same form.

तुमुन् can take इट्-आगम when the धातु is सेट्. पठ् (to study) is a सेट् धातु. To make a new प्रातिपदिक "to study", which is an infinitive form of पठ्:

1) पठ् + तुमुन् A कृत्-पत्यय तुमुन् is suffixed to the धातु पठ् (to study).

By the addition of the suffix, पठ् is qualified to be an अङ.
2) पठ् + तुम् न् of तुमुन is इत् letter and hence elided. उ is just for pronunciation.
3) पठ् + इ + तुम् Because पठ् is a सेट् धातु, इट्-आगम is attached to तुम.
4) पठितुम् Being कृदन्त, this is qualified to be a प्रातिपदिकम्.

तुमुन् ending word is qualified to be an अव्ययम्.

Here are more examples of तुमुन-ending words:

धातु:

| कृ (8U) to do | + तुमुन = | कर्तुम् (to do) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| जि (1P) to conquer | + तुमुन = | जेतुम (to conquer) |
| श्रु (1U) to hear | + तुमुन = | श्रोतुमू (to hear) |
| भुज् (7U) to eat | + तुमुन = | भोत्रुम (to experience) |
| मुच्. (6P) to set free | + तुमुन = | मोक्रुम (to release) |
| छिद्न (7U) to cut | + तुमुन = | छेत्तुम् (to cut) |
| ज्ञा (9P) to know | + तुमुन = | ज्ञातुमू (to know) |
| स्था (1P) to stay | + तुमुन $=$ | स्थातुम् (to stay) |
| सम + आ + धा (3U) to | + तुमुन = | समाधातुम (to resolve) |
| प्र + आप् (5P) to gain | + तुमुन = | प्राप्तुम (to gain) |
| हन् (2P) to injure | + तुमुन = | हन्तुम् (to injure) |
| तपू (4A) to rule | + तुमुन = | तपुम (to rule) |
| वच् (2P) to say | + तुमुन = | वक्रुम् (to say) |
| गम (1P) to go | + तुमुन = | गन्तुम (to go) |
| त्यज् (1P) to give up | + तुमुन् $=$ | त्यक्तुम (to give up) |

धातु:

| दृश़ (1P) to see | + तुमुन् $=$ | द्रश्टुम (to see) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| दा (3U) to give | + तुमुन = | दातुम् (to give) |
| लम् (1A) to gain | + तुमुन = | लब्धुम (to gain) |
| दह् (1P) to burn | + तुमुन = | दग्धुम (to burn) |
| बुध् (1P) to know | + तुमुन = | बोद्युम् (to know) |
| भू (1P) to be | + तुमुन् $=$ | भवितुम् (to be) |
| अस् (2P) to be | + तुमुन् $=$ | भवितुम् (to be) * the form is the same as "भू" धातु's |
| पర् (1P) to study | + तुमुन् $=$ | पठितुम (to study) |
| वद् (2P) to say | + तुमुन् $=$ | वदितुम् (to say) |
| विद्न (2P) to know | + तुमुन = | वेदितुम (to know) |
| शुच् (1P) to regret | + तुमुन् $=$ | शोचितुम् (to regret) |
| बाध् (1A) to negate | + तुमुन = | बाधितुम (to negate) |

Exercise 1: Find तुमुन-ending words, identify their धातुs, and translate by parsing each word.

1. गुरोः सेवां कर्तुम् इच्छा मयि अस्ति ।
2. देवद्त्तः कथां श्रोतुं नगरं गच्छति।
3. ये शास्त्राणि पठन्ति ते मोक्कुम् इच्छवः सन्ति।
4. त्वत् अन्यः मम संरायं छेत्तुम् न अर्हति ।
5. एषः विषयः अस्माभिः ज्ञातुं राक्यते।
6. सः ध्यानविषये मनः समाधातुं न शाक्कोति ।
7. देवद्तः फलानि प्राप्तुं वनं गच्छति।
8. अहं गुरून् बन्धून् च हन्तुं न इच्छामि।
9. ऋषिः तपः तप्तुं वने निवसति ।
10. देहिनः सर्वं कर्म त्यक्कुं न इाक्रुवन्ति।
11. यत् रूपं देवैः पूज्यते तत् अहं द्रष्टुम् इच्छामि ।
12. पुरुषः तपसा ऋषिः भवितुं शक्कोति।
13. त्वं एतत् पुस्तकं पठितुम् अर्हसि ।
14. कोऽपि एवं वदितुं न इाक्कोति ।
15. शिाष्याः तत्त्वं वेदितुं शास्त्रं पठन्ति ।
16. एते भेदाः बाधितुं राक्याः सन्ति।

## 7. Summary of कृत-वृत्तिः



## Topic VIII

## Taddhitānta

## तद्धितान्तम्

## तद्धित-प्रत्ययाः (Suffixes to a nominal base to make a new nominal base)

$\square$ तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are suffixes added to a प्रातिपदिक to make a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base).
प्रातिपदिकम् + तद्वितप्रत्ययः = प्रातिपदिकम्
$\square$ There are a few hundred तद्धित-प्रत्ययs. They are found in Pāṇini-sūtras 4.1.76 to 5.4.160. (*1)
$\square$ The new प्रातिपदिक and the declined form (सुबन्त) of that प्रातिपदिक are called तद्दितान्त (nominal derivative nouns).
$\square$ Most of the तद्धित-प्रत्ययs require the प्रातिपदिक to end with a certain विभक्ति.
$\square$ Generally, the meaning of a तद्यित-वृत्ति (तद्यित-पत्यत्यय-ending word) can be said by other words. For example, the meaning of a तद्यित-वृत्ति "घटत्वम" (pot-ness) is expressed as "घटस्य भावः" (the status of pot). This is the विग्रहवाक्य of the तद्दित-वृत्ति. The same meaning can be conveyed either by तद्यितवृत्ति or विग्रहवाक्य.

[^0]
## लक्षण-वाक्यम्

लक्षण-वाक्यम् is used to explain the meaning of a तद्वित-प्रत्यय.
$\square$ लक्षण-वाक्य consists a pronoun तद्. The तद् is replaced by a प्रातिपदिक to make a विग्रहवाक्य. Thus लक्षण-वाक्य is like a universal विग्रहवाक्य of a given तद्धित-वृत्ति.

For example, विग्रहवाक्य of a तद्दितवृत्ति "घटत्व" is "घटस्य भावः". लक्षणवाक्य of a तद्वित प्रत्यय "त्व" is "तस्य भावः". By this लक्षण-वाक्य we can understand that त्व is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक ending with $6^{\text {th }}$ case to denote "the status (भावः) of ... (तस्य)".

The universal विग्रहवाक्यम् of a given तद्धित-वृत्ति is called लक्षण-वाक्यम. In the previous example, त्व is the तद्दित-प्रत्यय and its लक्षण-वाक्य is "तस्य भावः". By this लक्षण-वाक्य we can understand that त्व is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक ending with $6^{\text {th }}$ case to denote "the status (भावः) of ... (तस्य)".

To understand तद्दित-प्रत्ययs, the following things need to be known:

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय
2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय
3) इत् letters of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and their functions
4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्भ
5) Gender (लिझ्न) of the new प्रातिपदिक
6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक
7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

In this book, each तद्धित-प्रत्यय will be introduced with these 7 aspects.

# Topic VIII- तद्वितान्तम् -Taddhitānta 

## 1. तस्यापत्यम् (descendant of ...)

$\square$ To make a new प्रातिपदिक which denotes a descendant of a given person or family, the following तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक ending with $6^{\text {th }}$ case, which indicates the person or family.
a. अण्/अज् are suffixed after some names
b. इज् is suffixed after some names
c. ढक् (एय) is suffixed after names of females
$\square$ These तद्यित-प्रत्ययs indicating "descendant of ..." are called अपत्यार्थ-प्रत्ययs.
$\square$ The लक्षणवाक्य of these तद्वित-प्रत्ययs is "तस्य अपत्यम". From this लक्षणवाक्य it is understood that these तद्वित-प्रत्ययs denote descendant (अपत्यम), and these are suffixed to a $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending प्रातिपदिक because तस्य is in $6^{\text {th }}$ case.
a. अण//अज्
$\square$ Of the तद्दित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known about "अण/अज्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य अपत्यम् (descendant of ...)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- अ

3) इत् letters of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- ण/ज् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. They cause आदि-वृद्यि in the अङ (See Topic IV)
- The difference of the two suffixes is only intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- आदि-वृद्धि in the अङ्ञ (See Topic IV)

5) Gender (लिझ्न) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्धित-वृत्तिः is qualifying

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine, as an अ-ending
- in feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- भरतस्य अपत्यं पुमान् (male) भारतः।
- भरतस्य अपत्यं स्री (female) भारती ।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "son of भरत" or "भरतस्य (of Bharata) अपत्यम् (descendant)":

1) भरत + डस्स् + अज् $A$ तद्धित-प्रत्यय अज् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, भरत + डस् is qualified to be an अङ्ग. "भरत + डस् + अज्", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) भरत + डस्स + अ By 1.3.3 हलन्त्त्यम, ज् of अज् is इत् and hence elided.
3) भरत $+\quad+$ अ Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) भारत + + अ The first vowel in the अङ्झ takes वृद्दि because the प्रत्यय is जित्.
5) भारत् + अ The last अ of the अङ is elided. (See Topic IV).
6) भारत This is the final form of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

If the person is male, the विग्रहवाक्य is "भरतस्य अपत्यं पुमान् भारतः।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending masculine, like राम. If the person is female, the विग्रहवाक्य is "भरतस्य अपत्यं स्री भारती।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी.

In the same manner, to make a word whose meaning is "son of धृतराष्ट्र" or "धृतराष्ट्रस्य (of Dhṛtarāṣṭra) अपत्यम् (descendant)":

1) धृतराष्ट्र + डस्स् + अण् $A$ तद्वित-प्रत्यय अण् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, धृतराष्ट्र + ङस् is qualified to be an अङ. "धृतराष्ट्र + डस्स् + अण्", since it ends with तद्वितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) धृतराष्ट्र + डस् + अ By 1.3.3 हलन्त्त्यम, ण् of अण् is इत् and hence elided.
3) धुतराष्ट्र + + अ Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुपू-प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) धार्तराष्ट्र + अ The first vowel in the अङ takes वृद्यि because the प्रत्यय is णित्.
5) धार्तराष्ट्र $\quad+$ अ The last अ of the अङ्ञ is elided. (See Topic IV).
6) धार्तराष्ट्र This is the final form of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः.

If the person is male, the विग्रहवाक्य is "धृतराष्ट्रस्य अपत्यं पुमान् धार्तराष्ट्र:।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending masculine, like राम. If the person is female, the विग्रहवाक्य is "धृतराष्ट्रस्य अपत्यं स्री धार्तराष्ट्री।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी.

When the last letter of the प्रातिपदिक is उवर्ण, it takes गुण. For example, to make a word whose meaning is "son of पाण्डु" or "पाण्डोः (of Pāṇ̣̣u) अपत्यम् (descendant)":

1) पाण्डु + डस्स् + अज् $A$ तद्वित-प्रत्यय अज् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, पाण्डु + डस्स् is qualified to be an अङ. "पाण्डु + डस् + अज", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) पाण्डु + ङस्स + अ By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम, ज् of अज् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) पाण्डु $+\quad+$ अ Inside the प्रातिपादिक, any सुपू-प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) पाण्डो + अ The last उ in the अङ् takes गुण (See Topic IV).
5) पाण्डव् + अ By 6.1.78 एचोऽयवायावः।, अव् is the substitute for ओ followed by a vowel.
6) पाण्डव This is the final form of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः.

If the person is male, the विग्रहवाक्य is "पाण्डोः अपत्यं पुमान् पाण्डव।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending masculine, like राम. If the person is female, the विग्रहवाक्य is "भृगोः अपत्यं स्त्री भार्गवी।" and the new प्रातिपदिक declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी.

## Exercise 1:

Find the प्रातिपदिक and प्रत्यय of the following तद्दितवृत्तिs, and give their विग्रहवाक्यs.

1. भारद्वाजः
2. कौरवः
3. वैदेही
4. शौनक:
5. राघवः
6. द्रौपदी
7. सौभद्रः
8. भार्गवः
9. गार्गी
10. पाण्डवः
11. जानकी

Example answer to 1:

- प्रातिपदिकम् $=$ भरद्वाज
- प्रत्ययः = अणु/अज् (अपत्यर्थ-तद्वित-प्रत्ययः)
- विग्रहवाक्यम् = भरद्वाजस्य अपत्यं पुमान् भारद्धाजः।


## b. इज

$\square$ Of the तद्दित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known about "इञू":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य अपत्यम् (descendant of ...)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- इ

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- ज् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. This is to cause आदि-वृद्धि in the अङ्ञ (See Topic IV)

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- आदि-वृद्धि in the अङ (See Topic IV)

5) Gender (लिझ्न) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्तिः is qualifying

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine, as an इ-ending
- in feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- अरुणस्य अपत्यं पुमान् (male) आरुणिः।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "son of अरुण" or "अरुणस्य अपत्यम्":

1) अरुण + ङस्स् + इज् $\quad \mathrm{A}$ तद्दित-प्रत्यय इज् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, अरुण + डस्स is qualified to be an अङ्भ. "अरुण + ङस्स् + इज्", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) अरुण + ङस् + इ By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम, ज् of इज् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) अरुण $+\quad+$ इ Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) आरुण $+\quad+$ इ The first vowel in the अङ्भ takes वृद्दि because the प्रत्यय is जित्.
5) आरुण् + इ The last अ of the अङ्झ is elided. (See Topic IV).
6) आरुणि This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः.

The new प्रातिपदिक declines as इ-ending masculine, like हरि.

## Exercise 1:

Try to find the प्रातिपदिक and प्रत्यय of the following तद्धितवृत्तिs, and give विग्रहवाक्य.

1. दाइारथिः (Another name of राम, a son of the king द्रारथ)
2. वारुणिः (Another name of भृगु, a son of the sage वरुण)
3. गार्गि:
4. वैदार्भिः
5. सौमदत्तिः
6. नैषादिः (Another name of एकलव्य, a son of निषाद)

Example answer to 1:

- प्रातिपदिकम् = दरारथ
- प्रत्ययः = इज् (अपत्यर्थ-तद्धित-प्रत्ययः)
- विग्रहवाक्यम् = दशारथस्य अपत्यं पुमान् दाइारथिः ।


## C. ढक्

$\square$ Of the तद्दित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known about "ढक्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य अपत्यम् (descendant of ...)
- Here, the प्रातिपदिक should be a name of a female.

2) Content of the तद्धित-पत्यत्य

- ढ (replaced by एय)

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- क् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. This is to cause आदि-वृद्धि in the अङ्ञ (See Topic IV)

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- The प्रत्यय ढ is replaced by "एय", by 7.1.2 आयनेयीनीयियः फढखछघां प्रत्ययादीनाम् ।
- आदि-वृद्धि in the अঙ्ञ (See Topic IV)

5) Gender (लिङ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्यित-वृत्तिः is qualifying

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine, as an अ-ending
- in feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- कुन्त्याः अपत्यं पुमान् (male) कौन्तेयः।
- विनतायाः अपत्यं स्री वैनतेयी।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "son of कुन्ती" or "कुन्त्राः अपत्यम्":

1) कुन्ती + ङस्स + ढक् $\quad A$ तद्दित-प्रत्यय ढक् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, कुन्ती + ङस्स् is qualified to be an अङ. "कुन्ती + ङस्स् + ढक्", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) कुन्ती + ङस्स् + ढ By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम, क् of ढक्र is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) कुन्ती + ङस् + एय ढ is replaced by एय.
4) कुन्ती $+\quad+$ एय Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप-प्रत्यय should be elided.
5) कौन्ती $+\quad+$ एय The first vowel in the अङ takes वृद्यि because the प्रत्यय is कित्.
6) कौन्त् + एय The last ई of the अङ्ञ is elided. (See Topic IV).
7) कौन्तेय This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः.

The new प्रातिपदिक declines as अ-ending masculine, like राम.

## Exercise

Try to find the प्रातिपदिक and प्रत्यय of the following तद्यितवृत्तिs, and give विग्रहवाक्य.

1. गाङ्भेयः
2. राधेयः
3. द्रौपदेयाः
4. आज्जनेयः

Example answer to 1:

- प्रातिपदिकम् = गङ्भा
- प्रत्ययः = ढक् (अपत्यर्थ-तद्वित-प्रत्ययः)
- विग्रहवाक्यम् = गङ्भयाः अपत्यं पुमान् गाङेयः ।


## Topic VIII- तद्धितान्तम् -Taddhitānta

## 2. मत्वर्थीयाः (one who has ...)

To make a new प्रातिपदिक indicating a person or a thing which has ..., or in which ... exists, the following तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक ending with $1^{\text {st }}$ case.
a. मतुँप् is suffixed to almost any प्रातिपदिक
b. इनिँ is suffixed when the प्रातिपदिक is अ-ending
c. विनिँ is suffixed when the प्रातिपदिक is अस-ending, and माया, मेधा, स्रज् words
d. अच् is suffixed when the प्रातिपदिक is one of the अर्शाआदि-गण, a certain group of words.
$\square$ These तद्धित-प्रत्ययs indicating "One who has ..." or "One in whom ... exists" are called मत्वर्थ-प्-त्ययs or मत्वर्थीय-प्रत्ययs (मतुँ + अर्थ $=$ मत्वर्थ).

The लक्षणवाक्य of these तद्धित-प्रत्ययs is "तद्न अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति". Literally translating, "That (तत् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ ) exists (अस्ति) belonging to this (अस्य), or in this (अस्मिन)." The meaning of the प्रातिपदिक should fit in the place of तदू. इदम-राब्द (अस्य or अस्मिन) should be the one denoted by the तद्यित-प्रत्यय. Hence, these तद्यित-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending प्रातिपदिक because तद् is in $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending.
$\square$ The प्रातिपदिक formed with the मत्वर्थीय-प्रत्यय conveys the following things:

- Abundance: धनवान्
- Praise: आचार्यवान, रूपवती, मातृमान्
- Exceeding: बलवान्
- Connection: दण्डी, छत्री


## a. मतुँपू

The following 7 things are to be known about मत्वर्थ-तद्धित-प्रत्यय "मतुँप":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- तद् अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति (There is ... belonging to/in this person/thing)

2) Content of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- मत्

3) इत् letters of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- उँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्।. उ is in उक् प्रत्याहारः . A प्रत्यय which has उक्र as इत् is called उगित्. उगित्-प्रत्यय-ending प्रातिपदिकs decline in a certain manner. For the sake of the declension, उँ is given as an इत् letter for this प्रत्यय.
- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्।. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्झ

- If अवर्ण or म is in the final or penultimate position in the प्रातिपदिक, then the म् of मतुँपू is replaced by व. See below "7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः" for examples.
- त/स् at the end of a पद is not considered to be पदान्त before मत्वर्थ-तद्यित-प्रत्यय. Thus such त/स् does not undergo any पदान्त modification such as जरत्वं, रूँत्वम, etc.

5) Gender (लिझ्न) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्धित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as उगित-प्रत्यय ending and अतु-ending प्रातिपदिक.
- In feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine, like नदी.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- श्रीः अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति इति श्रीमान् ।
- भगः अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति इति भगवान्। (अवर्ण-ending प्रातिपदिकम)
- भाः अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति इति भास्वान्। (प्रातिपदिकम् with penultimate अवर्ण)
- लक्ष्मीः अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति इति लक्ष्मीवान्। (पातिपदिकम् with penultimate म)

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "one who has श्री", or "one in whom श्री exists", in Sanskrit "श्रीः अस्य अस्ति", or "श्रीः अस्मिन् अस्ति":

1) श्री + सुँ + मतुँप् $A$ तद्धित-प्रत्यय मतुँप is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, श्री + सुँ is qualified to be an अझ. "श्री + सुँ + मतुँप", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) श्री + सुँ + मत् उँ and प् of मतुँपू are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) श्री + + मत् Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्पत्यय should be elided.
4) श्रीमत् This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः.

If the new प्रातिपदिक is qualifying a masculine word, it declines as अतु-ending masculine as उगित--प्रत्यय-ending word, like भगवत् (See Volume 1). If the new प्रातिपदिक qualifies a feminine word, a स्री-प्रत्यय ई is suffixed and it declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी.

In the same manner, to make a word whose meaning is "one who has भग", or "one in whom भग exists", in Sanskrit "भगः अस्य अस्ति", or "भगः अस्मिन् अस्ति":

1) भग + सुँ + मतुँपू A तद्धित-प्रत्यय मतुँपू is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, भग + सुँ is qualified to be an अङ्
"भग + सुँ + मतुँप", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) भग + सुँ + मत् उँ and प् of मतुँपू are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) भग + + मत् Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) भग + वत् Because the last letter of प्रातिपदिक is अ, the म of मतुँपू is replaced by व्
5) भगवत् This is the final form of the तद्यित-वृत्तिः.

## Exercise 1:

Try to find the प्रातिपदिक and प्रत्यय of the following तद्धितवृत्तिs, and give विग्रहवाक्य.

1. हनुमन्तम्
2. श्रीमत्यै
3. आत्मवन्तम्
4. धीमन्तौ
5. धनवताम्
6. शाक्तिमतः
7. बुद्यिमन्तः
8. विद्यावत्सु
9. बुद्दिमतोः

Example answer to 1:

- प्रातिपदिकम् $=$ हनु
- प्रत्ययः = मतुँपू (मत्वर्थ-तद्वित-प्रत्ययः)
- विग्रहवाक्यम् = हनुः अस्य अस्ति इति हनुमान, तं हनुमन्तम्।


## Exercise 2:

Find मतुँप--ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give विग्रहवाक्य for तद्वितवृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. श्रद्धावान् लभते ज्ञानम्।
2. एतत् तत्त्वं बुद्दिमन्भिः दृइयते।
3. अन्तवन्तः इमे देहाः।
4. सर्वशाक्तिमते नमः।
5. रामः हनुमन्तम् प्रेक्षते।
6. अयं प्रश्नः संरायवतः अस्ति ।
7. रिष्यः विद्यावतः नमति ।
8. विद्यावतां पुरुषाणां शोकः न अस्ति ।
9. उपदेशाः अर्जुनाय भगवता स्वयं प्रतिबोधितः।
10. भगवति ज्ञाते सति सर्वं ज्ञातं भवति।

## b. इनिँ

मत्वर्थ-तद्धित-प्रत्यय "इनिँ" is suffixed to अ-ending प्रातिपदिक.
The following 7 things are to be known regarding "इनि"":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तद्न अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति (There is ... belonging to/in this person/thing)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- इन

3) इत letter of the तद्धित-पत्यय and its functions

- इँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्।. This is to protect न from being इत्

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- अवर्ण/इवर्ण at the end of अङ will drop.

5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as इन-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्त्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः

- योगः अस्य अस्ति इति योगी।
- योगः अस्य अस्ति इति स्री योगिनी।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "one who has योग", or "one in whom योग exists", in Sanskrit "योगः अस्य अस्ति", or "योगः अस्मिन् अस्ति":

1) योग + सुँ + इनिँ A तद्वित-प्रत्यय इनिँ is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, योग + सुँ is qualified to be an अङ.
"योग + सुँ + इनिँ", since it ends with तद्दितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) योग + सुँ + इन् इँ of इनिँ is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) योग + + इन् Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप्-प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) योग् + इन् Because इनिँ is तद्दित and vowel-beginning suffix, अ at the end of अङ्भ gets elided.
5) योगिन् This is the final form of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः.

If the new प्रातिपदिक is qualifying a masculine word, it declines as इन-ending masculine word, such as योगी, योगिनौ, योगिनः, etc. If the new प्रातिपदिक qualifies a feminine word, a स्री-प्रत्यय ई is suffixed and it declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी, such as योगिनी, योगिन्यौ, योगिन्यः, etc.

## Exercise 1:

Find इनिँ-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give विग्रह्वाक्य for तद्वितवृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. तस्मात् योगी भव।
2. योगिनः तत्त्वं परयन्ति।
3. सर्वे जनाः सुखिनः भवन्तु ।
4. आचार्यः एतं शिष्यम् अधिकारिणं मन्यते।
5. सः वने पक्षिणः प्रेक्षते।
6. सर्वे विधयः शास्त्रिणा बुध्यन्ते।
7. लोकः देहिभिः अनुभूयते।
8. गुरुः अधिकारिणे तत्त्वम् उपदिशाति।
9. संसारिम्यः अधिकः योगी।
10. ज्ञानिनः लक्षणं पृच्छामि ।
11. भगवान् प्राणिनां देहं पुष्यति ।
12. योगिनां धीमतां च कुले जन्म भवति ।

## c. विनिँ

मत्वर्थ-तद्धित-प्रत्यय "विनिँ" is suffixed to अस्-ending प्रातिपदिक, and with "माया", "मेधा", and "स्रज्". The following 7 things are to be known regarding "विनि":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तद् अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति (There is ... belonging to/in this person/thing)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- विन्

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- ईँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्।. This is to protect न् from being इत्.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- त/स् at the end of पद is not considered to be पदान्त before मत्वर्थ-तद्वित-प्रत्यय. Thus these त/स् do not go through any पदान्त modification such as जरत्वम, रूँत्वम, etc.

5) Gender (लिङ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as इन-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- मनः अस्य अस्ति इति मनस्वी।
- मनः अस्य अस्ति इति स्री मनस्विनी।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "one who has मनस् (mind)", or "one in whom मनस् exists", in Sanskrit "मनः अस्य अस्ति", or "मनः अस्मिन् अस्ति":

1) मनस् + सुँ + विनिँ A तद्दित-प्रत्यय विनिँ is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, मनस् + सुँ is qualified to be an अङा. "मनसू + सुँ + विनिँ", since it ends with तद्वितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) मनस् + सुँ + विन् ईँ of विनिँ is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) मनस् + + विन् Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
(Note: the स् of मनस् does not go through पदान्त changes before विन.)
4) मनस्विन् This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः.

If the new प्रातिपदिक is qualifying a masculine word, it declines as इन-ending masculine word, such as मनस्वी, मनस्विनौ, मनस्विनः, etc. If the new प्रातिपदिक qualifies a feminine word, a स्रीप्रत्यय ई is suffixed and it declines as ई-ending feminine, like नदी, such as मनस्विनी, मनस्विन्यौ, मनस्विन्यः, etc.

## Exercise 1:

Find विनिँ-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give विग्रह्ववाक्य for तद्वितवृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. मायावी मायां दर्शायति।
2. सः प्रसिद्धः स्रग्वी भवति ।
3. राज्यं जित्वा यशास्विनः भवन्ति।
4. मेधाविना तत्त्वं ज्ञायते।
5. तेजस्विने नमः।
6. तपस्विभ्यः अधिकः योगी।
7. मेधाविनः लक्षणम् उपदिशयते।
8. तपस्विनां स्थानं तपोवनम्।
9. सा प्रसिद्धा तपस्विनी।

## d. अच.

मत्वर्थ-तद्धित-प्रत्यय "अच्" is suffixed to प्रातिपदिकs belonging to a group called अर्शाआदि-गण.
$\square$ अर्शाआदि-गण is a type of group which includes other words undergoing the same operation. Such a group is called आकृतिगण.

The following 7 things are to be known regarding "अच्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- तद् अस्य/अस्मिन् अस्ति (There is ... belonging to/in this person/thing)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- अ

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- च् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्त्यम् ।. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्ञ

- The अ/इवर्ण is elided. (See Topic IV)

5) Gender (लिझ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as अ-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्त्र-प्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is suffixed and the word becomes आ-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- योगः अस्य अस्ति इति योगः।
- पापः अस्य अस्ति इति पापः।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "one who has योग", or "one in whom योग exists", in Sanskrit "योगः अस्य अस्ति", or "योगः अस्मिन् अस्ति":

1) योग + सुँ + अच् $A$ तद्वित-प्रत्यय अच् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, योग + सुँ is qualified to be an अङ "योग + सुँ + अच्", since it ends with तद्दितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम.
2) योग + सुँ + अ च् of अच् is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) योग + अ Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) योग् + अ The last अवर्ण of अङ्ग is elided. (See Topic IV.)
5) योग This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः.

If the new प्रातिपदिक is qualifying a masculine or neuter word, it declines as अ-ending word. If the new प्रातिपदिक qualifies a feminine word, a स्री-प्रत्यय "टाप" is suffixed. ट् and प् of टाप् are इत् letters, thus only "आ" remain as a suffix. After applying दीर्घ-सन्धि, it becomes योगा and declines as आ-ending feminine word.

Some examples of अच्-ending words:

1. चैतन्यम् अस्य अस्ति इति चैतन्यः।
2. साड्ख्य्यं ज्ञानम् एषाम् अस्ति इति साड्ख्य्याः।
3. मित्रस्य भावः मैत्री, मैत्री अस्य अस्ति इति मैत्रः।
4. करुणा अस्य अस्ति इति करुणः।

## 3. तस्य भावः (the status of ...)

$\square$ To make a new प्रातिपदिक which denotes the status of ..., or ... ness, the following तद्वितप्रत्ययs are suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक in the $6^{\text {th }}$ case.
a. त्व is suffixed to almost any प्रातिपदिक
b. तलू is suffixed to almost any प्रातिपदिक
c. ष्यज् is suffixed to certain प्रातिपदिक
$\square$ The लक्षणवाक्य of these तद्दित-प्रत्ययs is "तस्य भावः", "the status (भावः) of that (तस्य)". The meaning of प्रातिपदिक should fit in the place of तद्न. These तद्धित-प्रत्ययs are suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक in $6^{\text {th }}$ case because तद्ञ is in $6^{\text {th }}$ case (तस्य).
$\square$ What the status belongs to is expressed in the $6^{\text {th }}$ case.
E.g., अर्थस्य सूक्ष्मत्वम् अस्ति । "There is a status of being subtle for the meaning."
"The meaning has subtlety."
वह्नेः उष्णता अस्ति । "Fire has the status of being hot."
श्रुतीनां प्रामाण्यम् अस्ति । "There is a status of means of knowledge for śrutis."
$\square$ To simplify the sentence, the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending and तद्यित-प्रत्यय can be cancelled together. E.g., अर्थः सूक्ष्मः अस्ति । The meaning is subtle. वह्निः उष्णः अस्ति । Fire is hot. श्रुतयः प्रमाणानि सन्ति । Śrutis are the means of knowledge.

## a. त्व

Of the ताद्यित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "त्व":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य भावः (the status of ..., ...-ness)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- त्व

3) इत् letters of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- त्व-ending प्रातिपदिक is always नपुंसकलिद्भ (neuter)

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- As an अ-ending neuter, just as ज्ञान.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः

- एकस्य भावः एकत्वम् ।
- घटस्य भावः घटत्वम्।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "the status of one", or "oneness", in Sanskrit "एकस्य भावः":

1) एक + डस्स् + त्व A तद्वित-प्रत्यय त्व is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, एक + ङस्स is qualified to be an अङ. "एक+ङन्स+त्व", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) एक + + त्व Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुपू-प्रत्यय should be elided.
3) एकत्व This is the final form of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः.

The new प्रातिपदिक is always neuter and it declines as अ-ending neuter, like ज्ञानम.

Exercise 1: Make त्व-ending प्रातिपदिकs and decline them according to the विग्रहवाक्यs.
E.g., मुमुक्षोः भावः मुमुक्षुत्वं, तस्मात् मुमुक्षुत्वात् ।

1. ईश्वरस्य भावः ... तेन ... ।
2. "मम" इति अस्य भावः ... , तस्य ... ।
3. कारणस्य भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
4. भगवतः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
5. अग्नेः भावः ... , तत् ... ।
6. अज्ञानवतः भावः ... , तस्मिन् ... ।
7. गुरोः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
8. तस्य भावः ... , तस्मिन् ... ।
9. कर्तुः भावः $\ldots$, तस्मै ... ।
10. वाचः भावः ... तस्मात् ... ।
11. भोक्तुः भावः ... तेन ... ।
12. अधिकारिणः भावः ... , तस्य ... ।
13. वस्तुनः भावः ... तस्य ... ।
14. साक्षिणः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
15. देवतायाः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
16. आत्मनः भावः ... तेन ... ।
17. पृथिव्याः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
18. बह्मणः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।
19. शाक्तेः भावः ... , तस्मात् ... ।

Exercise 2: Find त्व-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give विग्रहवाक्य for तद्धितवृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. फलं क्षयति तस्य अनित्यत्वात्।
2. तयोः विषययोः विलक्षणत्वं प्रदर्शायति ।
3. कर्मणः अनित्यत्वात् तस्य मोक्षसाधनत्वं न अस्ति ।
4. इन्द्रियाणां करणत्वं निर्दिइयते।
5. आत्मनः एकत्वात् अस्य सर्वव्यापित्वम्।
6. पुरुषस्य चेतनवत्त्वात् उपलब्धिः उपपद्यते।
7. पृथिव्याः गन्धवत्त्वम् अस्ति।

## b. तल

$\square$ Of the तद्धित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "तल्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य भावः (the status of ..., ...-ness)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- त

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- ल् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम्। This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- After making a प्रातिपदिक, a feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added.

5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- तल्-ending प्रातिपदिक is always स्रीलिद्न (feminine).

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- A feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added to the new प्रातिपदिक and declines as an आending feminine, just like गङ्ग.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- एकस्य भावः एकता ।
- घटस्य भावः घटता।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "the status of one", or "oneness", in Sanskrit "एकस्य भावः":

1) एक + डस्स् + तल् A तद्वित-प्रत्यय तलू is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, एक + ङस्स is qualified to be an अङ्. "एक + डस् + तल्", since it ends with तद्दितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) एक + ङस्स + त ल of तलू is इत् letter and hence elided.
3) एक + + त Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) एकत + आ Since तल्-ending प्रातिपदिक is feminine and ends with अ, a स्र्रीप्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is suffixed.
5) एकता

After applying सवर्ण-दीर्घ-सन्धि, this is the final form.

The new प्रातिपदिक is always feminine and it declines as आ-ending feminine, like गङ्भा.

Exercise 1: Make तल्-ending प्रातिपदिकs and decline them according to the विग्रहवाक्यs. E.g., योग्यस्य भावः योग्यता, तया योग्यतया ।

1. शिाष्यस्य भावः ... । तया ... ।
2. "इद़म्" इति अस्य भावः ... । तया ... ।
3. सर्वस्य भावः ... । तया ... ।
4. शरीरस्य भावः ... । तया ...।
5. वह्नेः भावः ... । तया ... ।
6. "अहम"" इति अस्य भावः ... । तया ... ।
7. हेतोः भावः ... । तया ... ।
8. "मम" इति अस्य भावः ... । तया ... ।
9. सर्वविद्ः भावः ... । तया ... ।
10. श्रोतुः भावः ... । तया ... ।
11. साक्षिणः भावः ... । तया ... ।
12. वस्तुनः भावः ... । तया ... ।
13. भगवतः भावः ... । तया ... ।
14. निष्ठायाः भावः ... । तया ... ।
15. सतः भावः ... । तया ... ।
16. आत्मनः भावः ... । तया ... ।
17. सृष्टेः भावः ... । तया ... ।
18. कर्मणः भावः ... । तया ... ।
c. ष्यन्
$\square$ Of the तद्वित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regardomg "ष्यज्":
1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- तस्य भावः (the status of ..., ...-ness)

2) Content of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- य

3) इत् letters of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- ष् - By 1.3.6 षः प्रत्ययस्य ।. It brings स्र्रीप्रत्यय ङीष्.
- ज्- By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् ।. जित् suffix can cause आदिवृद्धि in the अङ्

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- आदिवृद्धि takes place and अवर्ण or इवर्ण at the end of अङ्ञ drops. (See Topic IV)

5) Gender (लिझ्झ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- ष्यजु-ending प्रातिपदिक is नपुंसकलिङ (neuter).

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- As an अ-ending neuter, just as ज्ञान.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- एकस्य भावः ऐक्यम्।
- शुक्ुुस्य भावः शौक्लुम्।

For example, to make a word whose meaning is "the status of one", or "oneness", in Sanskrit "एकस्य भावः":

1) एक + डस्स + प्यज् $A$ तद्दित-प्रत्यय ष्यज् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, एक + ङस्स is qualified to be an अङ्. एक + ङस्स + ष्यज, ending with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) एक + डस् + य ष् and ज् of ष्यज् are इत् letters and hence elided.
3) एक $+\quad+$ य Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप्-प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) ऐक + य Because ष्यज् is जित, आदिवृद्धि takes place in the अङ.
5) ऐक् + य अ at the end of अङ gets elided.
6) ऐक्य This is the final form of तद्धित-वृत्ति.

The new प्रातिपदिक is neuter and it declines as अ-ending neuter, just as ज्ञान.

Exercise 1: Make ष्यज--ending प्रातिपदिकs according to the विग्रहवाक्यs.
E.g., उष्पस्य भावः औष्प्यम् ।

1. कृष्णस्य (of black) भावः (status) ... ।
2. लोहितस्य (of red) भावः ... ।
3. श्वेतस्य (of white) भावः ... ।
4. पीतस्य (of yellow) भावः ... ।
5. दृढस्य (of firm) भावः ... ।
6. लवणस्य (of beautiful) भावः ... ।
7. शीतस्य (of cold) भावः ... ।
8. जडस्य (of not conscious) भावः ... ।
9. पणिडतस्य (of scholar) भावः ... ।
10. स्थिरस्य (of steady) भावः ... ।
11. दीर्घस्य (of long) भावः ... ।
12. कुरालस्य (of skilful) भावः ... ।
13. निपुणस्य (of skilled) भावः ... ।
14. ईश्वरस्य (of lord) भावः ... ।
15. अधिपतेः (of lord) भावः ... ।
16. केवलस्य (of exclusive) भावः ... ।
17. उदासीनस्य (of indifferent) भावः ... ।
18. विलक्षणस्य (of different) भावः ... ।
19. समर्थस्य (of capable) भावः ... ।
20. कृत्त्तस्य (of whole) भावः ... ।

## 4. प्राग्दिशीयाः (अव्ययs made of सर्वनाम)

$\square$ There is a set of तद्धित-प्रत्ययs called प्राग्दि्रीय enjoined in Pāṇini-sūtras 5.3.1 to 5.3.26.
a. तसिंल् is suffixed in the sense of $5^{\text {th }}$ case

तसिँ is suffixed to any प्रातिपदिक in the sense of $5^{\text {th }}$ case
b. त्रह् is suffixed in the sense of $7^{\text {th }}$ case

दा/र्हि are suffixed in the sense of $7^{\text {th }}$ case, particularly in the sense of time
c. थाल्/थमुँ are suffixed in the sense of "in such manner".
$\square$ The तसिँल्- and त्रल्-ending words can be understood not only as $5^{\text {th }}$ or $7^{\text {th }}$ case ending words, but also as any case ending, depending on context.
$\square$ These तद्वितप्रत्ययs are suffixed to certain सर्वनामs and certain words like बहु.
सर्वनामs are of 35 kinds, with some restriction in meanings.

| 1. सर्व | 6. डतम | 11. त्व | 16. पर | 21. अधर | 26. यद् | 31. द्वि |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2. विश्व | 7. अन्य | 12. नेम | 17. अवर | 22. स्व | 27. एतद्न | 32. युष्मद्न |
| 3. उभ | 8. अन्यतर | 13. सम | 18. दक्षिण | 23. अन्तर | 28. इदम् | 33. अस्मद् |
| 4. उभय | 9. इतर | 14. सिम | 19. उत्तर | 24. त्यद् | 29. अदस् | 34. भवतुँ |
| 5. डतर | 10. त्वत् | 15. पूर्व | 20. अपर | 25. तद् | 30. एक | 35. किम् |

$\square$ Of these, प्राग्दि्रीय-तद्वित-प्रत्ययs are applicable to any सर्वनाम other than द्वि, युष्मद्न, अस्मद्न, and भवतुँ.

## a. तसिँल

$\square$ तद्धित-प्रत्यय तसिँलू is suffixed to certain सर्वनामs (1 to 30, and 35) and to the words बहु, परि, and अभि.

The following 7 things are to be known about "तसिँलू":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- पश्चम्यर्थे (in the sense of $5^{\text {th }}$ case)
- Also any other case by the context

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- तस्

3) इत् letters of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- ईँ - उच्चारणार्थम् (for easy pronunciation)
- लु - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् ।. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- किम् becomes "कु", thus कुतस् is the final form.
- तद् and यद् become "त" and "य" respectively. ततस् and यतस् are the final forms.
- एतद् becomes "अ", and इद् becomes "इ". अतस् and इतस् are the final forms.

5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The तसिँलू-ending प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, it does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्यित-वृत्तिः

- कस्मात् (from what, why) इति कुतः ।
- तस्मात् (from that, therefore) इति ततः।
- यस्मात् (from which, because of which) इति यतः।
- एतस्मात् (from this, because of this) इति अतः।
- अस्मात् (from this) इति इतः।

For example, instead of saying कस्मात, which is किम् + पश्चमी विभक्तिः, तसिँल् can be added to किम् in the sense of $5^{\text {th }}$ case:

कस्मात् + तसिँलू A तद्धित-प्रत्यय तसिँल् is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $5^{\text {th }}$ case ending. The sense of तसिँलू is स्वार्थे (the meaning of itself).

1) किम् + ङसिँ + तसिँल् This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः. By the addition of the suffix, किम् + डससँ is qualified to be an अङ. "किम् + ङससिँ + तसिँल्", since it ends with तद्धितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) किम् + ङससिँ + तस् इँ is for उच्चारण, and ल् is an इत् letter and hence elided.
3) किम् + + तस् Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्पत्यय should be elided.
4) कु + तस् When followed by त/ ह्, किम् is substituted by कु.
5) कुतस् This is the final form of the तद्धित-वृत्तिः. All प्राग्दिशीय-तद्दितप्रत्यय-ending words are defined as अव्ययs.

Being a प्रातिपदिक, सुप--पत्यय is suffixed for gaining the status of पद. However, being an अव्यय, the सुपु-प्रत्यय has to be elided. Thus the forms appears as though they were not declined.

Here is the list of तसिँलू-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

प्रातिपदिकम
किम् (what) + ड.सिँ + तसिँल् = कुतः (from what, why)

सर्व (all) + ङससँ + तसिँल् $=$
अन्य (another) + ङससँ + तसिँलू $=$ यद् (which) + ङससँ + तसिँल् $=$ तद् (that) + ङससँ + तसिँलू $=$ एतद्न (this) + ङससँँ + तसिँल् $=$
इद्म् (this) + ङसिँ + तसिँल् $=$ पर (following) + ङससँँ + तसिँल् = स्व (self) + ङनसँँ + तसिँल् = बहु (many) + ङ.सिँ + तसिँलू = परि + ङससँँ + तसिँल् = अभि + ङससिँ + तसिँल् =
with तसिँल--प्रत्यय

सर्वतः (from all)
अन्यतः (from another)
यतः (from which, because)
ततः (from that, therefore)
अतः (from this)
इतः (from this)
परतः (after)
स्वतः (by oneself)
बहुतः (from many sides)

परितः (all around, every side) $n / a$ (परि is indeclinable.)
अभितः (entirely, near, all sides) $n / a$ (अभि is indeclinable.)

## Exercise 1:

Find तसिँलू-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an optional form for the तद्धितवृत्ति (e.g., "तस्मात" for "ततः"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. त्वं कुतः आगतः।
2. वायुः सर्वतः वर्तते।
3. पृथिव्याः अन्यतः मनुष्याः आगच्छन्ति ।
4. यतः एकं कर्तव्यं कर्म तेन कृतं ततः सः अन्यस्मिन् कर्मणि अधिकृतः।
5. यतः इमानि भूतानि जायन्ते तत् विजिज्ञासस्व।
6. बह्मणः जेयत्वम् अस्ति। अतः जिज्ञासा कर्तव्या।
7. इतः ऊर्ध्वं गन्तुं न राक्यते मार्गस्य अभावात्।
8. यतः देवदत्तः सर्वं प्राप्तवान् ततः सः परितः तुष्टः भवति।
9. ज्ञानिनां सुखम् अभितः वर्तते।
10. सः कुतश्चन आगतवान् ।
11. सः अजः सन् कुतश्चित् न जायते।
12. सः कुतश्चन न बिभेति ।

Another suffix तसिँ (ईँ is इत् letter) is very similar to तसिँलू. It is suffixed to any noun in the sense of $5^{\text {th }}$ case endings. It can be in the sense of $3^{\text {rd }}$ case as well.

The distinction between क्त-ending word and तसिँल्र/ तसिँ-ending word is the प्रकृति, to which the प्रत्यय is suffixed. क्ष-प्रत्यय is suffixed to a धातु, while तसिँलू/ तसिँ-प्रत्यय is suffixed to $a$ प्रातिपदिक. This can be examined when distinguishing the two.

## Exercise 2:

Find तसिँ-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an optional form for the तद्धितवृत्ति (e.g. "ग्रामात" for "ग्रामतः"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. ते जनाः ग्रामतः आगच्छन्ति ।
2. अज्ञानतः सः मुह्यति।
3. योगः यतता अवाप्षुं राक्यः उपायतः।
4. त्वं संशायम् अरोषतः छेत्तुम् अर्हसि ।
5. अहं विवेकतः संक्षेपतः विवरणं करिष्यामि ।
6. प्राणिनः स्वभावतः अधर्मे प्रवर्तन्ते।
7. सः मां वेत्ति तत्त्वतः।
8. सर्वान् कामान् अरोषतः त्यजाति ।

## b. त्रलु/दा/र्हि

तद्वित-प्रत्यय त्रल is suffixed to certain सर्वनामs (1 to 30, and 35) and बहु.
The following 7 things are to be known regarding "त्रल्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- सप्तम्यर्थे (in the sense of $7^{\text {th }}$ case)
- Also any other case by the context

2) Content of the तद्धित-पत्रत्यय

- 즈

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- ल् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् ।. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- किम् becomes कु, then कुत्र is the final form. क is another final form.
- तद् and यद् become त and य respectively. तत्र and यत्र are the final forms.
- एतद् becomes अ, then अत्र is the final form.
- इद्म with त्रल् becomes इह.
- When the $7^{\text {th }}$ case is used to indicate time, दा/र्हि is suffixed to सर्व, एक, अन्य, किम, यद्, and तद्न. See the final forms in the following विग्रहवाक्यs.

5) Gender (लिद्झ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The त्रल्/दा/रि-ending प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, it does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- कस्मिन् (in which) इति कुत्र, के कस्मिन् काले (when) इति कदा, कर्हि ।
- तस्मिन् (in that) इति तत्र । तस्मिन् काले (then) इति तदा, तर्हि, तदानीम् ।
- यस्मिन् (in that which) इति यत्र। यस्मिन् काले (in which time) इति यदा, यर्हि ।
- एतस्मिन् (in this) इति अत्र। एतमिन् काले (in this time, now) इति एतर्हि ।
- अस्मिन् (in this) इति इह । अस्मिन् काले (in this time, now) इति एतर्हि, अधुना, इदानीम् ।
- सर्वस्मिन् (in all) इति सर्वत्र । सर्वस्मिन् काले (in all time, always) इति सर्वदा, सदा।

Here is the list of त्रल्-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

| प्रातिपदिकम् | with त्रलु-प्रत्यय | विभक्ति-end |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| किम् (what) + त्रल् = | कुत्र, क्र | (where) | कस्मिन् |
| सर्व (all) + त्रल् = | सर्वत्र | (everywhere) | सर्वस्मिन् |
| एक (one) + त्रल् = | एकत्र | (in one) | एकस्मिन् |
| अन्य (another) + त्रल् = | अन्यत्र | (another place) | अन्यस्मिन् |
| उभय (both) + त्रल् = | उभयत्र | (in both places) | उभयस्मिन् |
| यद् (which) + त्रल् = | यत्र | (in which) | यस्मिन् |
| तद् (that) + त्रल् = | तत्र | (in that, there) | तस्मिन् |
| एतद् (this) + त्रल् = | अत्र | (in this, here) | एतस्मिन् |
| इद्म् (this) + त्रल् = | इह | (here) | अस्मिन् |
| अदस् (that) + त्रल् = | अमुत्र | (there) | अमुष्मिन् |
| पूर्व (previous) + त्रल् = | पूर्वत्र | (in the previous) | पूर्वस्मिन् |
| पर (following)+ त्र्् = | परत्र | (in the following) | परस्मिन् |
| बहु (many) + त्रल् = | बहुत्र | (in many) | बहुषु |

Here is the list of दा/र्हि-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

| प्रातिपदिकम |  | with दा/र्हि-प्रत्यय |  | विभक्ति-ending form |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| सर्व (all) | + दा $=$ | सर्वदा/सदा | (all the time) | सर्वस्मिन् (काले) |
| एक (one) | + दा $=$ | एकदा | (once, one time) | एकस्मिन् (काले) |
| अन्य (another) | ) + द $=$ | अन्यदा | (another time) | अन्यस्मिन् (काले) |
| किम् (what) | + दा $/$ हि = | कदा/कर्हि | (when) | कस्मिन् (काले) |
| यद् (which) | + दा / हि = | यदा/यर्हि | (when, in which time) | यस्मिन् (काले) |
| तद् (that) | + दा/ हैि = | तदा/तर्हि | (then, that time) | तस्मिन् (काले) |
| तद् (that) |  | तदानीम् | (then, that time) | तस्मिन् (काले) |
| एतद् (this) | + है $=$ | एतर्हि | (now, at this time) | एतस्मिन् (काले) |
| इदम (this) | + है = | एतर्हि | (now, at this time) | अस्मिन् (काले) |
| इदम (this) |  | अधुना | (now, at this time) | अस्मिन् (काले) |
| इद्म (this) |  | इदानीम् | (now, at this time) | अस्मिन् (काले) |

## Exercise 1:

Find त्रल्-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an optional form for the तद्दितवृत्ति (e.g. "तस्मिन् देशो" for "तस्मिन"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. भवान् कुत्र निवसति।
2. यत्र अभिजायते तत्र योगं लभते ततः यतते।
3. भगवान् सर्वत्र वर्तते।
4. अत्र विषये संरायः न अस्ति ।
5. योगी सर्वत्र भगवन्तं परयति।
6. तत्र जरा न विद्यते। इह तु विद्यते।
7. पुरुषार्थं मोक्षात् अन्यत्र न पइयति ।
8. तेजः तमः च एकत्र भवितुं न राक्कुतः।
9. द्वयोः विरुद्धयोः राब्दयोः एकत्र प्रयोजनं न उपपद्यते।
10. तत्र एवं सति एतत् न उपपद्यते।
11. सः कुत्रचित् देरो निवसति ।
12. यत्र यत्र धूमः तत्र तत्र वह्निः।
13. एतत् क्रचित् अपि न दृइयते।

Exercise 2:
Find दा /र्हि-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an optional form for the तद्दितवृत्ति (e.g. "तस्मिन् काले" for "तदा"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. कदा अत्र आगतवान् ।
2. कार्यं कारणात् भिन्नत्वेन कदाचित् न तिष्ठति ।
3. तपस्वी सर्वदा तपः तपति ।
4. मम सिद्दि: सदा भवतु।
5. द्वे कार्ये एकदा सिध्यतः।
6. यदा सर्वान् त्यजति तदा सः त्यागी उच्चते ।
7. यदा धर्मः ग्लायति तदा भगवान् अवतरति ।
8. यदि कर्मणः अनित्यत्वं स्यात् तर्हि फलस्यापि अनित्यत्वं स्यात्।
9. यदि एतत् कर्तु न राक्यते तदा उपायः दातव्यः।
10. यदा प्रकाइाः अस्ति तदानीम् एव एतत् दृरयते।
11. एकं विषयं उपसंहटत्य अधुना अपरं विषयं वक्ष्यामः।
12. पूर्वभागः परिसमाप्तः। अथ इदानीम् उत्तरभागः आरभ्यते।
13. जीवः कदाचित् सुखम् आम्नोति ।
14. एतस्य श्लोकस्य अर्थं कदाचन न विस्मरतु ।

## c. थाल्/थमुँ

$\square$ तद्वित-प्रत्यय थालू and थमुँ are suffixed to certain सर्वनामs (1 to 30, and 35) and बहु.
$\square$ The following 7 things are to be known regarding "थाल्" and "थमु"":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- प्रकारवचने (in ... manner)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- था/थम्

3) इत letters of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- ल् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् I. This is for intonation.
- उँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्।. This is to protect म् from हलन्त्त्यम.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- Some प्रातिपदिक take थाल् while some other प्रातिपदिक take थमुँ. See the list in the next page.

5) Gender (लिद्भ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- The थाल्/थमुँ-ending प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, it does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- तेन प्रकारेण इति तथा
- केन प्रकारेण इति कथम्।

Here is the list of थाल्/थमुँ-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

| प्रातिपदिकम |  | with थालु/थमुँ-प्रत्यय |  | विभक्ति-ending form |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| सर्व (all) | + थाल् = | सर्वथा | (in every manner) | सर्वेः प्रकरेः |
| अन्य (another) | + थाट् = | अन्यथा | (otherwise) | अन्येन प्रकारेण |
| इतर (another) | + थाल् = | इतरथा | (otherwise) | इतरेण प्रकारेण |
| उभय (both) | + थाल् = | उभयथा | (in both ways) | उभयेन प्रकारेण |
| यद् (which) | + थाट् = | यथा | (just as) | येन प्रकारेण |
| तद (that) | + थाल् = | तथा | (in that manner) | तेन प्रकारेण |
| एक (one) | + थाल् = | एकथा | (in one way) | एकेन प्रकारेण |
| बहु (many) | + थाट् = | बहुथा | (in many ways) | बहुभिः प्रकारैः |
| किम् (what) | + थमुँ $=$ | कथम् | (how, in what manner) | केन प्रकारेण |
| एतद् (this) | + थमुँ $=$ | इत्थम | (in this manner) | एतेन प्रकारेण |
| इद्म (this) | + थमुँ $=$ | इत्थम् | (in this manner) | अनेन प्रकारेण |

## Exercise 1:

Find थाल्/ थमुँ -ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an optional form for the तद्धितवृत्ति (e.g. "तेन प्रकारेण" for "तथा"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. एतत् कथं विजानीयाम्।
2. कथम् अहं भीष्मं द्रोणं च इषुभिः प्रतियुध्ये।
3. सर्वथा वर्तमानः अपि सः योगी भगवति वर्तते।
4. अन्यथा न उपपत्तिः स्यात्।
5. यथा वदामि तथा अवगच्छ ।
6. यथा तत् भवति तथा एतत्।
7. यथा एतत् वस्तु उपदिष्टं तथा जानामि।
8. इदं इत्थम् इति निर्देष्टुं एतत् न राक्यते।
9. जीवः कथश्चित् मनुष्यजन्म लभते।
10. एतत् कथश्चिद्न अपि न प्राप्यते।

## Summary of प्राग्दिशीयाः

| प्रातिपदिकम् तद्यितप्रत्यय: |  | सर्वनाम |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | बहु many |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | किम what | सर्व all | अन्य other | तद्J that | यद् which | एतदु this | इदम् this | एक one |  |  |
| $5^{\text {th }}$ <br> case | तसिलू | कुतः | सर्वतः | अन्यतः | ततः | यतः | अतः | इतः | एकतः | बहुतः | परितः, अभितः |
|  | पक्षे | कस्मात् | सर्वस्मात् | अन्यस्मात् | तस्मात् | यस्मात् | एतस्मात् | अस्मात् | एकस्मात् | बहुभ्यः | - |
| $7^{\text {th }}$ <br> case | त्रहू | कुत्र/क | सर्वत्र | अन्यत्र | तत्र | यत्र | अत्र | इह | एकत्र | बहुत्र | - |
|  | दा/र्हि (time) | कदा/कर्हि | सर्वदा, सदा | अन्यदा | तदा/तर्हि <br> तदानीम | यदा/यर्हि | एतर्हि | एतर्हि/ <br> अधुना/इदानीम | एकदा | $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$ | - |
|  | पक्षे | कस्मिन् | सर्वस्मिन् | अन्यस्मिन् | तस्मिन् | यस्मिन् | एतस्मिन् | अस्मिन् | एकस्मिन् | बहुषु | - |
| man -ner | थालु/थमु | कथम् | सर्वथा | अन्यथा | तथा | यथा | इत्थम् | इत्थम् | एकथा | बहुथा | - |
|  | पक्षे | केन प्रकारेण | संर्वेः प्रकारेः | अन्येन प्रकारेण | तेन प्रकारेण | येन प्रकारेण | एतेन प्रकारेण | अनेन प्रकारेण | एकेन प्रकारेण | बहुभिः <br> प्रकारेः | - |

## 5. Comparative \& superlative

$\square$ To make the comparative or superlative form of an adjective, the तद्दित-प्रत्ययs listed below are suffixed to the adjective.
a. तरप् is suffixed in the sense of comparative.
b. तमप् is suffixed in the sense of superlative.
c. ईयसुँन is suffixed in the sense of comparative.
d. इष्ठन् is suffixed in the sense of superlative.

Examples of comparative and superlative

| प्रत्ययः प्रातिपदिकम् | तरप् (...er) | तमप् (...est) | ईयसुँन् (. . .er) | इष्ठन् (...est) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| लघु (light) | लघुतर (lighter) | लघुतम (lightest) | लघीयस् (lighter) | लघिष्ठ (lightest) |
| गुरु (great) | गुरुतर (greater) | गुरुतम (heaviest) | गरीयस् (greater) | गरिष्ठ (greatest) |
| प्रिय (dear) | प्रियतर (dearer) | प्रियतम (dearest) | प्रेयस् (dearer) | प्रेष्ठ (dearest) |
| प्रशास्य (exalted) | प्रशास्यतर <br> (more exalted) | प्रशास्यतम <br> (most exalted) | श्रेयस /ज्यायस् (more exalted) | श्रेष्ठ/ज्येष्ठ (best) (most exalted) |

$\square$ The $5^{\text {th }}$ case is used to indicate point or object of reference in the comparison. (विभक्ते पश्चमी).
E.g., अयम् (this is) एतस्मात् (than this) लघुतरः (smaller) ।
$\square$ निर्धारणे षष्ठी and सप्तमी ( $6^{\text {th }}$ and $7^{\text {th }}$ cases in the sense of specifying) are used to say "between" in comparative and "among" in superlative.
E.g., अयम् (this is) एतयो: ${ }^{6 / 2,7 / 2}$ (between the two) लघुतरः (smaller)।
E.g., अयम् (this is) एतेषाम् ${ }^{6 / 3} /$ एतेषु $^{7 / 3}$ (among these) लघुतमः (smallest)।

## a. तरप्

Of तद्दित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "तरप्":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- Even though there is no लक्षणवाक्य for तरप, the sense is told as: "[द्वयोः एकस्य] अतिशायने" (in the sense of superiority [of the two])

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- तर

3) इत् letter of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् I. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

5) Gender (लिङ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as अ-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्त्र-प्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is suffixed and the word becomes आ-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- अयम् (This is) अनयोः (of the two) अतिशायेन (exceedingly) लघुः (small), लघुतरः (smaller)।

Examples of तरप-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

| प्रातिपदिकम. | with तरप--प्यय | Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| लघु (small) | + तरप् $=$ | लघुतर (smaller) | लघुतरः, लघुतरम, लघुतरा |
| प्रहास्य (exalted) | + तरप् $=$ | प्रहास्यतर (more exalted) | प्रहास्यतरः, प्रहास्यतरम, प्रशास्यतरा |
| वृद्ध (old) | + तरप् $=$ | वृद्धतर (elder) | वृद्धतरः, वृद्धतरम, वृद्धतरा |
| युवन् (young) | + तरप् $=$ | युवतर (younger) | युवतरः, युवतरम, युवतरा |

## b. तमप

Of तद्धित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "तमपू":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- Even though there is no लक्षणवाक्य for तमप, the sense is told as: "अतिशायने" (in the sense of superiority)

2) Content of the तद्धित-पप्रत्यय

- तम

3) इत् letter of the तद्धित-पत्यत्य and its functions

- प् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् I. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

5) Gender (लिङ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्दित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as अ-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्र्री-प्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is suffixed and the word becomes आ-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- अयम् (This is) एतेषाम् (of many) अतिरायेन (exceedingly) लघुः (small), लघुतमः (smallest)।

Examples of तमप--ending प्रातिपदिकs:

| प्रातिपदिकम |  | with तमप-प्पत्यय | Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| लघु (small) | + तमप् $=$ | लघुतम (smallest) | लघुतमः, लघुतमम, लघुतमा |
| प्रहास्य (exalted) | + तमप् $=$ | प्रशास्यतम (most exalted) | प्रहास्यतमः , प्रशास्यतमम, प्रशास्यतमा |
| वृद्ध (old) | + तमप् $=$ | वृद्धतम (eldest) | वृद्धतमः, वृद्धतमम, वृद्धतमा |
| युवन् (young) | + तमप् $=$ | युवतम (youngest) | युवतमः, युवतमम, युवतमा |

## c. ईखसुँन

$\square$ Of तद्धित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "ईयसुँन":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- Even though there is no लक्षणवाक्य for ईयसुँन, the sense is told as: "[द्वयोः एकस्य] आतिशायने" (in the sense of superiority [of the two])

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- ईयस्

3) इत् letters of the तद्यित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- उँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेशेऽजनुनासिक इत्।. This decides the type of declension of the new प्रातिपदिक.
- न् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्यम् I. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ्भ

- टि (a part of अङ্গ starting from the last vowel until the end) is elided.
- Certain प्रातिपदिक undergo special changes.

5) Gender (लिझ्) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as अस-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्र्री-प्रत्यय ङीप् (ई) is suffixed and the word becomes ई-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः

- अयम् (This is) अनयोः (of the two) आतिशायेन (exceedingly) लघुः (small), लघीयान् (smaller)।

Examples of ईयसुँन-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

## Regular forms:

The following प्रातिपदिकs get टि-लोप (elision of a part starting from the last vowel).
प्रातिपदिकम with ईयसुँन-प्रत्यय Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}$

लघु (small, light) + ईयसुँन् = लघीयस् (smaller, lighter) लघीयान, ल ुघीयः, लघीयसी
अणु (minute, atomic) + ईयसुँन = अणीयस् (more minute) अणीयान, अणीयः, अणीयसी
महत् (great, big) + ईयसुँन् = महीयस् (greater, bigger) महीयान, महीयः, महीयसी
बल (strong) + ईयसुँन्
बर्रीयस् (stronger) ब्रीयान, बल्रीयः, वर्टीयसी
साधु (good) + ईयसुँन = साधीयस् (better) साधीयान, साधीयः, साधीयसी

* Irregular forms:

प्रातिपदिकम
गुरु (great, heavy) + ईयसुँन
स्थूल (gross) + ईयसुँन् = स्थवीयस् (grosser) स्थवीयान, स्थवीयः, स्थवीयसी

| बहु (many) | + ईयसुँन $=$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| प्रिय (beloved) | + ईयसुँन |

with ईयसुँन-प्रत्यय
गरीयस् (greater, heavier) गरीयान, गरीयः, गरीयसी
स्थवीयस् (grosser) स्थवीयान, स्थवीयः, स्थवीयसी
भूयस् (many more) भूयान, भूयः, भूयसी
प्रेयस् (more beloved) प्रेयान, प्रेयः, प्रेयसी

* Irregular forms with optional forms:

प्रातिपदिकम
with ईयसुँन- -प्रत्यय
Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}$
प्रशास्य (exalted) + ईयसुँन = श्रेयस् (more exalted) श्रेयान, श्रेय:, श्रेयसी

+ ईयसुँन = ज्यायस् (more exalted) ज्यायान, ज्यायः, ज्यायसी
वृद्ध (old) + ईयसुँन् = ज्यायस् (elder) ज्यायान, ज्यायः, ज्यायसी
+ ईयसुँन = वर्षीयस् (elder) वर्षीयान, वर्षीयः, वर्षीयसी
युवन् (young) + ईयसुँन = कनीयस् (younger) कनीयान, कनीयः, कनीयसी
+ ईयसुँन्न = यवीयस् (younger) यवीयान, यवीयः, यवीयसी
अल्प (small) + ईयसुँन $=$ कनीयस् (smaller)
+ ईयसुँन् = अल्पीयस् (smaller) अल्पीयान, अल्पीयः, अल्पीयसी

श्रेयस-शब्द्ध: पुँल्लिजे

|  | एकवचनम | द्विवचनम | बहुवचनम् |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| प्रथमा विभक्तिः | श्रेयान् | श्रेयांसौ | श्रेयांसः |
| द्रितीया विभक्तिः | श्रेयांसम् | श्रेयांसौ | श्रेयसः |
| तृतीया विभक्तिः | श्रेयसा | श्रेयोग्याम् | श्रेयोभिः |
| चतुर्थी विभक्तिः | श्रेयसे | श्रेयोग्याम् | श्रेयोग्यः |
| पश्चमी विभक्तिः | श्रेयसः | श्रेयोग्याम् | श्रेयोग्यः |
| षष्टी विभक्तिः | श्रेयसः | श्रेयसोः | श्रेयसाम् |
| सपमी विभक्तिः | श्रेयसि | श्रेयसोः | श्रेयस्स्त/श्रेयःसु |
| सम्बोधनम् | हे श्रेयन् | हे श्रेयांसौ | हे श्रेयांसः |

श्रेयस-राब्दः नपूंसकल्लिने

|  | एकवचनम | द्विवचनम | बहुवचनम् |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| प्रथमा विभक्तिः | श्रेयः | श्रेयसी | श्रेयांसि |

Forms are the same as above in द्वितीया सम्बोधनम. From तृतीया to सपममी, the forms are the same as पुँल्लिजे.

## Exercise 1:

Find ईयसुन्न-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an तरप-ending form for the ईयसुँन-ending (e.g. "महीयान" for "महतर:"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. अनयोः घटयोः अयं लघीयान्।
2. अनयोः फलयोः इदं लघीयः।
3. अनयोः सेनयोः इयं लघीयसी।
4. मनसः बुद्द्धः महीयसी।
5. आकाशात् पृथिवी स्थवीयसी।
6. महतो महीयान्।
7. अणोरणीयान्।
8. मतिरेव बलात् गरीयसी।
9. कर्म ज्यायः अकर्मणः।
10. ज्यायसी बुद्धि: कर्मणः।
11. ततः दु:खतरम् नु किम्।
12. पुत्रादिपि प्रियतरं दानम्।
13. कतरम् अस्माकं गरीयः इति न जानामि।
14. अहं श्रेयः न अनुपइयामि।
15. परधर्मात् स्वधर्मः श्रेयान।
16. सः अणोः अणीयांसम् अनुस्मरति।
17. गरीयसे आदिकर्ने नमः।
18. गीतामृतम् अस्माकं श्रेयसे भूयात्।

## d. इष्ठन्

$\square$ Of तद्धित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known regarding "इष्ठन":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- Even though there is no लक्षणवाक्य for इष्ठन, the sense is told as:
"अतिशायने" (in the sense of superiority)

2) Content of the तद्धित-प्रत्यय

- इष्ठ

3) इत् letter of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and its functions

- न् - By 1.3.3 हलन्त्त्यम् ।. This is for intonation.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- टि (a part of अङ্গ starting from the last vowel until the end) is elided.
- Certain प्रातिपदिक undergo special changes.

5) Gender (लिझ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Depends on the gender of the noun which the तद्वित-वृत्ति is qualifying.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- In masculine and neuter, as अ-ending word.
- In feminine, a स्त्र-प्रत्यय टाप् (आ) is suffixed and the word becomes आ-ending feminine.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- अयम् (This is) एतेषां (of many) अतिशायेन (exceedingly) लघुः (small), लघिष्ठः (smallest)।

Examples of इष्ठन्-ending प्रातिपदिकs:

Regular forms:
The following प्रातिपदिकs get टि-लोप (elision of a part starting from the last vowel).
प्रातिपदिकम्

| लघु (small, light) | + इष्ठन् = | लघिष्ठ (smallest, lightest) | लघिष्ठः, लघिष्ठम, लघिष्ठा |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| महत् (great, big) | + इष्ठन् = | महिष्ठ (greatest, biggest) | महिष्ठः, महिष्ठम, महिष्ठा |
| बल (strong) | + इष्ठन = | बलिष्ठ (strongest) | बलिष्ठः, बलिष्ठम, बलिष्ठा |
| साधु (good) | + इष्ठन् = | साधिष्ठ (best) | साधिष्ठः, साधिष्ठम, साधिष्ठा |

## * Irregular forms:

प्रातिपदिकम
with इष्ठन-प्रत्यय
Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}$

| गुरु (great, heavy) | + इष्ठन् = | गरिष्ठ (greatest, heaviest) | गरिष्ठः, गरिष्ठम, गरिष्ठा |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| स्थूल (gross) | + इप्ठन् $=$ | स्थविष्ठ (grossest) | स्थविष्ठः, स्थविष्ठम, स्थविष्ठा |
| बहु (many) | + इष्ठन् = | भूयिष्ठ (most) | भूयिष्ठः, भूयिष्ठम, भूयिष्ठा |
| प्रिय (beloved) | + इष्ठन् = | प्रेष्ठ (most beloved) | प्रेष्ठः, प्रेष्ठम, प्रेष्ठा |
| दृढ (firm) | + इष्ठन् = | द्रढिष्ठ (firmest) | द्रढिष्ठः, द्रढिष्ठम, द्रढिष्टा |
| बाढ (good) | + इष्ठन् = | साधिष्ठ (best) | साधिष्ठः, साधिष्ठम, साधिष्ठा |
| अन्तिक (near) | + इष्ठन् $=$ | नेदिष्ठ (nearest) | नेदिष्ठः, नेदिष्ठम, नेदिष्ठा |

Irregular forms with optional forms:

| प्रातिपदिकम |  | with इष्ठन-प्रत्यय | Declined forms in $1 / 1 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{n}$, f |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| प्रशास्य (exalted) | + इष्ठन् = | श्रेष्ठ (most exalted) | श्रेष्ठः, श्रेष्ठम, श्रेष्ठा |
|  | + इप्ठन् = | ज्येष्ठ (most exalted) | ज्येष्ठ:, ज्येष्ठम, ज्येष्ठा |
| वृद्य (old) | + इत्ठन् = | ज्येष्ठ (eldest) | ज्येष्ठ:, ज्येष्ठम, ज्येष्ठा |
|  | + इप्ठन् = | वर्षिष्ठ (eldest) | वर्षिट्ठः, वर्षिष्टम, वर्षिष्टा |
| युवन् (young) | + इप्ठन् = | कनिष्ठ (youngest) | कनिष्ठः, कनिष्ठम, कनिष्ठा |
|  | + इष्ठन् = | यविष्ठ (youngest) | यविष्ठः, यविष्ठम, यविष्ठा |
| अल्प (small) | + इष्ठन् = | कनिष्ठ (smallest) | कनिष्ठः, कनिष्ठम, कनिष्ठा |
|  | + इष्ठन् = | अल्पिष्ठ (smallest) | अल्पिष्ठः, अल्पिष्ठम, अल्पिष्ठा |

## Exercise 1:

Find इष्ठन-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, give an तमप-ending form for the इष्ठन-ending (e.g. "महिष्ठ:" for "महतमः"), and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.
E.g., अयं सर्वेषु पुरुषेषु बलिष्टः।

- इष्ठन--ending word
- प्रातिपदिकम्
- प्रत्ययः
- तमप-ending form
- Translation

बलिष्ठ:
बल
इष्ठन्
बलतमः
This (person) is the strongest among all men.

1. अयम् एतेषां घटानां लघिष्ठः।
2. इदम् एतेषां फलानां महिष्ठम्।
3. एतत् अक्षरं वरिष्टम्।
4. एषा उपमानां साधिष्ठा।
5. अयं पुरुषाणां गरिष्टः।
6. पृथिवी भूतानां स्थविष्ठा।
7. इदं वस्तु सर्वेम्यः अन्येभ्यः नेदिष्ठम्।
8. अयं पुरुषः सर्वेषां श्रेष्ठः।
9. वर्षिष्ठेः अन्तेवासिमिः ऋषिमिः आवृतं दक्षिणामूर्तिं नमामि।
10. पाण्डवानां ज्येष्ठः युधिष्ठिरः।
11. पाण्डवानां कनिष्ठः सहदेवः।
12. सः सर्वेषां मनुष्यानां बलिष्टः द्रढिष्ठः भवति ।

## 6. अभूत-तद्भावे (new status)

## a. च्वेँ

$\square$ To make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "a thing which was not ... before, and it is .. now", a तद्धित-प्रत्यय चिवेँ is suffixed to a प्रातिपदिक.

The new प्रातिपदिक should be used with भू, अस, and कृ धातुs. These धातुs can be conjugated, or suffixed by a कृत्-प्रत्यय.

Of the तद्वित-प्रत्ययs, the following 7 things are to be known about "च्वे"":

1) लक्षण-वाक्यम् of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय

- अभूत-तद्भावे (the status of that which was not there before)

2) Content of the तद्दित-प्रत्यय

- Zero-प्रत्ययः (When only व् of विँ remains in a suffix, that व् is also elided by 6.1.67 वेरपृक्तस्य।)

3) इत letters of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय and their functions

- च् - By 1.3.7 चुटू। This is for intonation.
- ईँ - By 1.3.2 उपदेरोऽजनुनासिक इत्। This is to make the zero-प्रत्यय.

4) Special modifications of प्रत्यय and अङ

- The remaining व् is also elided.
- The last अवर्ण of the अङ becomes ई.

5) Gender (लिङ्ञ) of the new प्रातिपदिक

- च्चेँ-ending प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय.

6) Declension of the new प्रातिपदिक

- Being an अव्यय, it does not decline.

7) विग्रहवाक्यम् of the तद्दित-वृत्तिः

- अशुक्कः शुक्कुः सम्पद्यते (what is not white gains white) इति शुक्कीभवति (it becomes white)।
- अशुक्कु शुक्कुं सम्पद्यते तं करोति इति शुक्कीकरोति (one makes it white)।

For example, to make a new प्रातिपदिक whose meaning is "a thing becomes शुक्त (white) which was not white before":

1) शुक्त + सुँ + चिवेँ $A$ तद्धित-प्रत्यय च्विँ is suffixed after a प्रातिपदिक with the $1^{\text {st }}$ case ending. By the addition of the suffix, शुक्त + सुँ is qualified to be an अङ.
"शुक्欠 + सुँ + चिवेँ", since it ends with तद्दितप्रत्यय, is considered a प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) शुक्क + सुँ $+\quad$ Everything in the suffix is elided.
3) शुक्क + Inside the प्रातिपदिक, any सुप--प्रत्यय should be elided.
4) शुक्की The last अ becomes ई. This is the final form of the तद्वित-वृत्तिः. The new प्रातिपदिक is अव्यय and should come before भू, अस, कृ धातुs. E.g., शुक्कीभवति, शुक्कीकरोति, etc.

Exercise 1: Find च्च̈ँ-ending words, identify प्रातिपदिक, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. अहं मम वस्त्रं शुक्कीकरोमि।
2. मम वस्तं शुक्कीभविष्यति।
3. इह बुद्धि-मनसी एकी-कृत्य "मनसः" इति निर्देशः।
4. अनेकानां पदानाम् एकीभवनं समासः।
5. अहं मायां वशी-कृत्य देहवान् इव भवामि ।
6. अर्जुनं निमित्तीकृत्य भगवान् आह।
7. देहः भस्मीभूतः अदर्शानं गतः नष्टः उच्यते।
8. घटः नयनाभ्यां विषयीभवति।
9. घटः विषयीकृतः भवति।
10. कर्मयोगेन अन्तःकरणं शुद्दीभवति ।
11. परोक्षविषयम् अपरोक्षीकरोति।
12. अव्ययीभाव-समासः
13. अपश्चीकृतं भूतं पश्चीकरणेन पश्चीकृतं भवति ।

## 7. Summary of तद्धित-वृत्तिः

| Type | लक्षणवाक्यम् | प्रत्ययः | Sense | Example | Gender | Declension in $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{f}^{1 / 1}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| अपत्यार्थीयाः | तस्यापत्यम् | अण, अणु, इण, ढक् | descendant of ... | भारत, दारारथि, कौन्तेय | All 3 | भारतः, भारतम, भारती, etc |
| मत्वर्थीयाः | तदस्यास्त्यस्मिन्नित | मतुँप् | one who has ... | धीमत, भगवत, | All 3 | भगवान, भगवत, भगवती |
|  |  | इनिँ |  | योगिन, सुखिन, पक्षिन् |  | योगी, योगि, योगिनी |
|  |  | विनें |  | मनस्विन, मेधाविन् |  | मनस्वी, मनस्वि, मनस्विनी |
|  |  | अच् |  | योग, पाप, सघ्घ |  | योगः, योगम, योगा |
| भावार्थीया: | तस्यभावः | त्व | Status of ...,...-ness | एकत्व, समत्व | नपुंसकलिड्ञ: | एकत्वम् |
|  |  | तलू |  | एकता, समता | स्रीलिएँ | एकता |
|  |  | ष्यज् |  | ऐक्य, सामन्य | नपुंसकलिड्ञ: | ऐक्यम् |
| प्राग्दिशीयाः | पश्च्यम्यर्थ | तसिंल् | $5^{\text {th }}$ case | सर्वतः (from all), ततः | अव्ययम् | $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$ |
|  | सप्तम्यर्थे | त्रह, दा, र्हि | $7^{\text {th }}$ case | सर्वत्र (everywhere), सर्वदा, तर्हि |  |  |
|  | प्रकारवचने | थाल, थमुँ | $3^{\text {rd }}$ case + प्रकारेण | सर्वथा (in all manners), तथा, इत्थम् |  |  |
| Comparative | एतयोः अतिशायने | तरप, ईयसुँन् | ...er, more ... | लघुतर (lighter), लघ्यीयस, श्रेयस् (more exalted) | All 3 | लघुतरः, लधुतरम, लघुतरा श्रेयसान, श्रेयः, श्रेयसी |
| Superlative | एतेषाम् अतिशायते | तमप, इष्ठन् | ...est, most ... | लघुतम (smallest), लघघष्ठ, श्रेष्ठ (most exalted) | All 3 | लघुतमः, लघुतमम, लघुतमा श्रेष्ठ:, श्रेष्ठम, श्रेष्ठा |
| चिव̆ | अभूत-तद्भावे |  | becoming/making into ... | शुक्की भू/असु/कृ <br> (becoming/making white) | अव्ययम् | n/a |

## Topic IX

## समासाः

## Samāsāḥ

## Basic concept of समास-वृत्तिः

## (A new प्रातिपदिक made by compounding सुबन्तs)

$\square$ Two or more सुबन्तs (nouns) which are meaningfully linked can be compounded into a new प्रातिपदिक (nominal base). That new प्रातिपदिकम् is called a समास-वृत्तिः .
$\square$ Generally a compound is made with two nouns at a time.
$\square$ Of the two nouns, the first noun is called the पूर्वपदम, and the second noun is called the उत्तरपदम्.

## सुबन्तम् $($ पूर्वपदम) + सुबन्तम् (उत्तरपदम्) $=$ new प्रातिपदिकम् called समासवृत्तिः

$\square$ A compound is called समासवृत्तिः, समासः, or समस्तपद्म.

## i. The difference between समास: and सन्धि:

- To become a समस्तपद (compound), there must be a meaningful connection (समर्थः) between the two nouns.
- To apply a सन्धि rule, the two words need not to have a meaningful connection. Only the sounds have to be next to each other.
For example, in "रामो महेश्वरस्यार्चनं करोति ।", the two words "महा"and "ईश्वर" have a meaningful connection, and hence compounded into a single word "महेश्वर", a समस्तपद. Between "महा" and "ईश्वर", a sandhi is applied since two vowels are next to each other. All other words are noncompound words (व्यस्तपद). Between each word, if applicable, sandhi rules are applied.


## Topic IX - समासः - Samāsaḥ

## ii. Pānini-sūtras enjoining regulations on समास

$\square$ Pāṇini-sūtras 2.1.3 to 2.2.29 categorize the समासs into 4 types, and give the regulations on what combinations are possible. Only certain सुबन्तs can be compounded to certain सुबन्तs. These possible combinations will be studied in this section.
$\square$ Pāṇini-sūtras 2.2.30 to 2.2.38 describe which word should come first in the compound. In other words, those sūtras decide which सुबन्त should be the पूर्वपद in the समास.
$\square$ Pāṇini-sūtras 6.3.1 to 6.3.110 describe the modifications of पूर्वपद, such as सह becoming स, नज़ becoming अ, etc.
$\square$ Pāṇini-sūtras 5.4.68 to 5.4.160, at the end of the तद्वित-प्रत्यय section, describe प्रत्ययs enjoined at the end of certain combinations of nouns in समास.

## iii. Process of making समास

In the process of making a compound, the status of "समासः" is given to a group of words by the regulations in Pāṇini-sūtras. Since that sentence is qualified as "समासः", all सुप्प्रत्ययs are elided and only प्रातिपदिकs remain in "समासः". That is what we call a compound word. Therefore, the meaning of a compound can be expressed by a sentence as well. We call that sentence विग्रहवाक्यम.

वटस्य मूलम् This is a लौकिकविग्रहः, a sentence in natural language.
By a regulation of Pāṇini-sūtra these nouns are qualified to be compounded as a षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः.

1) वट+ङस्स + मूल +सुँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, the same sentence in grammatical breakdown. By being qualified as समासः, these words are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम.
2) वट+ + मूल + All सुप--पत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) वटमूल This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "वटमूल" declines as अ-ending neuter, because the उत्तरपद determines the gender and number of the समास in a तत्पुरुषसमास.

## iv. स्वपद-समासः अस्वपद-समासः (नित्यसमासः)

$\square$ When all the प्रातिपदिकs in समास are found in लौकिकविग्रह, that समास is called स्वपद्समास. E.g., वटस्य मूलम् इति वटमूलम्। पीतम् अम्बरं यस्य सः पीताम्बरः।
$\square$ When all the प्रातिपदिकs in समास are not found in लौकिकविग्रह, that समास is called अस्वपद्समास. This is also called नित्यसमास because the combination of the words are always found only in compound, not in a sentence. E.g., कृष्णस्य समीपम् इति उपकृष्णम्। अन्यः देहः देहान्तरम् ।

## v. Steps of understanding समास

1. Try to understand the context.
2. Before understaning the meaning of समासवृत्ति, set विभक्ति aside. Keep only प्रातिपदिक of समासवृत्ति in view.
3. Identify the type of the whole समासवृत्ति. If the समासवृत्ति is not either अव्ययीभावसमास or द्वन्द्वसमास, which are fairly easy to identify, then compare the last word of the समास and the noun which is qualified by the समास. If they are equal, then the समास is a तत्पुरुषसमास. If not, it should be a बहुव्रीहिसमास.
4. If there are more than two words in the समासवृत्ति, resolve them by taking two words at a time.
5. Finally, bring back the विभक्ति that was kept aside in the step 2 by adding the declined form of "तद्" word.

For each type of समास, these are the things to be known:

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वयद
2) with which noun, as an उत्तरपद
3) Special modification of compounded words
4) Gender and number of the compound
5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

## 1. अव्ययीभाव-समासः (Type A)

$\square$ The meaning of पूर्वपद has predominance. (पूर्वपदार्थ-प्रधानम)

$$
\text { पूर्वपदम् }+ \text { उत्तरपदम् }
$$

These are the things to be known about अव्ययीभाव-समास:

1) Which noun can go into the compound, as a पूर्वपद
a. अधि etc. in विभक्ति-अर्थ (in the sense of case suffix)
b. उप etc. in समीप-अर्थ (in the sense of nearness)
c. अनु etc. in the sense of "according to ..."
d. प्रति etc. in the sense of repetition
e. यथा etc. in the sense of "not exceeding ..."
2) with which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- any noun

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- All अव्ययीभावसमासs become अव्यय words.
- Neuter gender is given to अव्ययीभावसमासs

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- Generally अव्ययीभाव-समास compounds are अस्वपदसमास/नित्यसमास - the पूर्वपद itself is not seen in विग्रहवाक्यम्. Instead, the meaning of the पूर्वपद is provided in the विग्रहवाक्यम्.
- Generally अव्ययीभाव-समासs are used adverbially.

Examples:
a. अधि etc. in विभक्ति-अर्थ (in the sense of case suffix)

- हरौ इति अधिहरि। with reference to Hari

देवद्त्तस्य भक्तिः अधिहरि अस्ति । Devotion of Devadatta is in Hari.

- आत्मानम् अधिकृत्य, आत्मनि, इति अध्यात्मम् । Centered on the self, about the self
- देवान् अधिकृत्य, देवासु, इति अधिदेवम् । Centered on Devas, with reference to Devas
b. उप etc. in समीप-अर्थ (in the sense of nearness)
- कृष्णस्य (of Kṛṣṇa) समीपम् (near) इति उपकृष्णम् । Near Kṛṣna
c. अनु etc. in the sense of "according to ..."
- रूपस्य (form) योग्यम् (in keeping with) इति अनुरूपम्। suitable
- प्रश्नस्य (question) योग्यम् (in keeping with) इति अनुप्रश्नम् । एतानि उत्तराणि अनुप्रश्नं भवन्ति। These answers are proper to the question.
d. प्रति etc. in the sense of repetition
- दिने दिने इति प्रतिदिनम्। everyday

देवदत्तः प्रतिदिनं देवालयं गच्छति । Devadatta goes to the temple everyday.

- एकम् एकम् इति प्रत्येकम्। each one
e. यथा etc. in the sense of "not exceeding ..."
- उत्कम् अनतिक्रम्य इति यथोक्तम् । not exceeding what was told

रिष्यः आचार्यस्य वचनं यथोक्तम् अवगच्छति । The student understands the word of the teacher as it was told.

- इाक्तिम् अनतिकम्य इति यथाइाक्ति । not exceeding one's capacity सः रुद्राध्यायं यथाशाक्ति पठति अन्तःकरणशुद्यये। He chants Rudram as much as he can for the sake of अन्तःकरणशुद्घि.


## 2. तत्पुरुष-समासाः (Type T)

$\square$ The meaning of उत्तरपद्म् has predominance. (उत्तरपदार्थ-प्रधानम)

$\square$ There are many types of तत्पुरुष-समासs.
a. द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (2T)
b. तृतीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (3T)
c. चतुर्थी-तत्पुरुष-समासः $(4 \mathrm{~T})$
d. पश्चमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (5T)
e. षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (6T)
f. सप्तमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (7T)
g. कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः (KT)
h. नज्-तत्पुरुष-समासः (NT)
i. कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समासः
j. उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समासः (UT)
$\square$ Common features among all types of तत्पुरुष-समासs.

- Gender and number of the compound are the same as that of उत्तरपद.


## a. द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 2T)

These are the things to be known about द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद्

- $2^{\text {nd }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- "श्रित (one who has taken refuge to)", "अतीत (one who has crossed)", "पतित (one who has fallen)", "गत (one who has gone)", "अत्यस्त (one who has transgressed)", "प्राप्त (one who has gained)", "आपन्न (one who has gained)"
- Etc.

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$


## Examples:

1. कृष्ण ${ }^{2 / 1}$ श्रितः (resorted to) कृष्णश्रितः (the one who has resorted to Krsṣna)।
2. दुःखम् ${ }^{2 / 1}$ अतीतः (crossed) दुःखातीतः (the one who has crossed over sorrow)।
3. कूप ${ }^{2 / 1}$ पतितः (fallen) कूपपतितः (the one who has fallen in the well)।
4. मां ${ }^{2 / 1}$ गतः मदनतः (that which obtains in Me)। (See Topic IV)
5. ग्रामम् ${ }^{2 / 1}$ अत्यस्तः (transgressed) ग्रामात्यस्तः (the one who has transgressed the village)।
6. ग्रामं ${ }^{2 / 1}$ प्राप्तः (reached) ग्रामप्राप्तः (the one who has reached the village)।
7. संशायम् ${ }^{2 / 1}$ आपन्नः (gained) संशायापन्नः (the one who has gained the doubt)।

The process of compounding
कृष्णं श्रितः
This is a लौकिकविग्रहः, a sentence in natural language. By a regulation of Pāṇini-sūtra these nouns are qualified to be compounded as a द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः.

1) कृष्ण+अम्+ श्रित+सुँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, the same sentence in grammatical breakdown. Being समासः, they are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम्
2) कृष्ण + +श्रित $+\quad$ All सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) कृष्णश्रित This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "कृष्णश्रित" declines as अ-ending masculine , because, in a तत्पुरुषसमास, the उत्तरपद determines the gender and number of the समास.

## Exercise 1:

Following the example, give लौकिकविग्रह with conversion of the case and type of समास as well as अलौकिकविग्रह for the समासवृत्तिs listed below. And also write shorthand parsing signs.

1. ईश्वरश्रितानाम
2. आदित्यगतम्
3. सुखप्राप्ते
4. अरण्यातीतान्
5. मद्गतःः
6. दुःखापन्नैः
7. कूपपतितानि
8. मार्गात्यस्ताय

Example for 1:
लौकिकविग्रहः ईश्वरम् श्रिताः ईश्वराश्रिताः (द्वितीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (2T)), तेषाम् ईश्वरश्रितानाम्।
[पूर्वपद in $2^{\text {nd }}$ case] [उत्तरपद in $1^{\text {st }}$ case] [समस्तपद] (type of समास), [तद् in the respective case] [the समास word in the form found in original text]
अलौकिकविग्रहः ईश्वर + अम् + श्रित + जस्

## Exercise 2:

By parsing the sentence, give विग्रहवाक्य for समासवृत्ति, translate the following sentences.

1. देवदत्तः कृष्णश्रितः भक्तः भवति ।
2. सर्वगताय नमः।
3. यः एतत् जानाति सः ज्ञानी गुणातीतः च उच्चते।
4. प्रजासु सुखप्राप्तासु नृपस्य सन्तोषः वर्धते।
5. रारीरगताः दोषाः स्रानेन अपनीयन्ते।
6. हे भगवन् दुःखापन्नान् पाहि ।

## b. तृतीया-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 3T)

hese are the things to be known about तृतीया-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- कृदन्त word whose कर्ता or करणम् is told by the $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending word
- Etc.

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

Examples:

1. गुरुणा ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by teacher) उपदिष्टः (taught) गुरूपदिष्टः (that which is taught by teacher)।
2. तेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by that) कृतं (done) तत्कृतम् (that which is done by that)।
3. विद्यया ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by knowledge) रहितः (deserted) विद्यारहितः (that which is devoid of knowledge)।
4. योगेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by yoga) युक्तः (being together) योगयुक्तः (one who is together by yoga)।
5. घटेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ (by pot) अवच्छिन्नः (qualified) घटावच्छिन्नः (that which is qualified by pot)।
6. भीमेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ समः (same) भीमसमः (one who is equal to Bhīma)।
7. योगसंसिद्यः ४.३८
8. यस्य संशायाः ज्ञानसज्छिन्नाः, कर्माणि तं न निबधन्ति।
9. अहं तत् भक्त्युपहृतम् अश्नामि। * अशा (9P) to receive

## c. चतुर्थी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 4T)

These are the things to be known about चतुर्थी-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- $4^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- A word indicating material to make something which is told by the $4^{\text {th }}$ case ending word
- "अर्थ" word which is meant for something which is told by the $4^{\text {th }}$ case ending word. Exceptionally this compound is अस्वपद-समास/नित्य-समास. Thus in विग्रहवाक्य instead of "अर्थ" word, a declined form of इद्म is used.
- "बलि", "हित", "सुख", and "रक्षित"

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद
- As for the compound in which "अर्थ" as उत्तरपद, the gender follows the qualified word.

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- As for the compound in which "अर्थ" as उत्तरपद, instead of "अर्थ", a प्रातिपदिक "इद्म", declined in the gender and number of the qualified noun, is seen in विग्रहवाक्यम्.

Examples:

1. यूपाय ${ }^{4 / 1}$ (for the post) दारु (wood) यूपदारु (wood meant for making a post)।
2. द्विजाय ${ }^{4 / 1}$ (for the priest) अयं ${ }^{m / 1 / 1}$ (this) द्विजार्थः $m / 1 / 1$ (that which is meant for priest) सूपः m/1/1 (soup)।
3. द्विजाय ${ }^{4 / 1}$ इयं ${ }^{\mathrm{f} / 1 / 1}$ द्विजार्था ${ }^{\mathrm{f} / 1 / 1}$ माला ${ }^{\mathrm{f} / 1 / 1}$ (garland)।
4. द्विजाय ${ }^{4 / 1}$ इदं ${ }^{n / 1 / 1}$ द्विजार्थम् ${ }^{n / 1 / 1}$ धनम् ${ }^{n / 1 / 1}$ (wealth)।

## d. पश्चमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 5T)

These are the things to be known about पश्चमी-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद्

- $5^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- "भय" (fear) word whose source is told by the $5^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun.
- "अपेत", "मुक्त", "पतित"
- Etc.

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

Examples:

1. चोरात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (of thief) भयं (fear) चोरभयम् (fear of thief)।
2. सुखात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (of happiness) अपेतः (devoid) सुखापेतः (devoid of happiness)।
3. रोगात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (from disease) मुक्तः (freed) रोगमुक्तः (freed from disease) ।
4. स्वर्गात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (from heaven) पतितः (fallen) स्वर्गपतितः (fallen from the heaven)।
5. तस्मात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (from that) व्यतिरिक्तम् (differed) तद्यतिरिक्तम् (differed from that)।

## e. षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 6T)

These are the things to be known about षष्टी-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद्

- $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- almost any noun

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

For example, a sentence "आत्मनः ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of self) ज्ञानम (knowledge)" is qualified to be compounded as a षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समास by a regulation of Pāṇini-sūtra. The compound word will be "आत्मज्ञानम् (knowledge of self)"

आत्मनः ज्ञानम् This is a लौकिकविग्रहः, a sentence in natural language.

1) आत्मन्+डस्स्ज्ञान+सुँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, the same sentence in grammatical breakdown. Being समासः, they are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम्
2) आत्मन्+ +ज्ञान+ All सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) आत्म + ज्ञान By 8.2.7 नल्रोपः प्रातिपदिकान्त्तस्य।, the last न् of the प्रातिपदिक and पद् is elided.
4) आत्मज्ञान This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "आत्मज्ञान" declines as अ-ending neuter, because, in a तत्पुरुषसमास, the उत्तरपद determines the gender and number of the समास.

Other examples of षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः:

1. ईश्वरस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of Īśvara) अनुग्रहः (blessing) ईश्वरानुग्रहः (blessing of Īśvara)।
2. बह्मण: ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of brahman) विद्या (knowledge) बह्मविद्या (knowledge of brahman)।
3. उमायाः ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of Umā) पतिः (husband) उमापतिः (husband of Umā)।
4. कर्मणः ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of action) फलं (fruit) कर्मफलम् (fruit of action)।
5. तस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ (of that) पुरुषः (person) तत्पुरुषः (person of that)।
6. तत्त्वस्य (of truth) विवेकः(discrimination) तत्त्वविवेकः, तस्य (of that) प्रकारः(method) तत्त्वविवेकप्रकारः (method of discrimination of truth) ।

## Exercise 1:

Following the example, give लौकिकविग्रह with conversion of the case and type of समास as well as अलौकिकविग्रह for the समासवृत्तिs listed below. And also write shorthand parsing signs.

1. गुरुकुले
6T
2. गौरीपुत्रस्य
3. कर्मफलेषु
4. गणपतिः
5. मदात्मानम्
6. सर्वात्मा
7. जगदुरुम्
8. मनोवृत्तयः
9. स्वधर्मानुष्ठानम्
10. लोकनाथाय
11. सत्त्वगुणानाम्
12. वेदान्तवाक्यार्थस्य

## Example for 1:

लौकिकविग्रहः गुरोः कुलम् गुरूकुलम् । तस्मिन् गुरुकुले। षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (6T)
अलौकिकविग्रहः गुरु + ङस्स् + कुल + सुँ

Exercise 2:
By parsing the sentence, give विग्रहवाक्य for समासवृत्ति, translate the following sentences.

1. पाण्डुपुत्राणां चमूं पइय।
2. हृषीकेराः प्रहसन् इव तम् इद्म् उवाच ।
3. कर्मसन्न्यासात् कर्मयोगः विशिष्यते।
4. यथा पद्मपत्रम् अम्भसा न लिप्यते तथा सः कर्मफलैः न लिप्यते।
5. योगिनः आत्मशुद्दये कर्म कुर्वन्ति।
6. स्वर्गभोगेषु इच्छाराहित्यम्।
7. ध्यानेन चित्तैकाग्रता लम्यते।
8. ज्ञानप्राप्पिसमये असौ मुक्तः भवति।
9. तत्त्वबोधप्रकारं वक्ष्यामः।

## f. सप्तमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type 7T)

These are the things to be known about सप्तमी-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- $7^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद्

- "कुराल (expert)", "निपुण (proficient)", "पण्डित (scholar)", "प्रवीण (skilled)". "अधि (depending)", etc.

3) Special modification of compounded words

- When "अधि (depending)" word comes in उत्तरपद, its form changes into "अधीन".

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

Some examples of सप्तमी-तत्पुरुष-समासः:

1. तर्क ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (in logic) कुरालः (expert) तर्ककुरालः (expert in logic)।
2. शास्त्र ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (in the scripture) निपुणः (proficient) शास्त्रनिपुणः (proficient in the scripture)।
3. वेदेषु ${ }^{7 / 3}$ (in the Veda) पण्डितः (scholar) वेदपण्डितः (scholar in the Vedas)।
4. शास्त्रेषु ${ }^{7 / 3}$ (in weapons) प्रवीणः (skilled) शास्त्रव्रीणः (skilled in weapons)।
5. ईश्वर्व ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (on the lord) अधि (depending) ईश्वराधीनः (depending on the lord)।
6. स्वस्मिन् ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (on oneself) अधि (depending) स्वाधीनः (depending on oneself, independent)।
7. परेषु ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (on other things) अधि (depending) पराधीनः (depending on others)।

## g. कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type KT)

Pāṇini gave a technical name (संज्ञा) "कर्मधारय" to a तत्पुरुषसमास in which the both पूर्वपद and उत्तरपद are in समानाधिकरण (in apposition).

These are the things to be known about कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- "एक (one)", "सर्व (all)", "केवल (only)", etc
- विशोषण (adjective)

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- noun in apposition (समानाधिकरण) to the पूर्वपद
- विशोष्य (substantive/qualified) of the विशोषण (adjective/qualifier)

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- परमश्च असौ आत्मा च इति परमात्मा।
- गुरुः एव देवः गुरुदेवः ।
- आम्रः (mango) इति वृक्षः आम्रवृक्षः (mango tree)।

Some examples of कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः:

1. एकः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (one) पुरुषः (person) एकपुरुषः (one person)।
2. सर्वर्व ${ }^{1 / 3}$ (all) देवाः (gods) सर्वदेवाः (all gods)।
3. केवलः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (exclusive) सन्न्यासः (renunciation) केवलसन्न्यासः (exclusive renunciation)।
4. नीलम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (blue) उत्पलम् (lotus) नीलोत्पलम् (blue lotus)।

There is a group of irregular कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासs named "मयूरव्यंसकादि". Some of them are:

1. अन्यः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (another) अर्थः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (meaning) अर्थान्तरम् (another meaning)।
2. अन्यत् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (another) वस्तु ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (object) वस्त्वन्तरम् (another object)।

Note: This type of compound is always neuter.
3. चित् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (consciousness) एव ${ }^{0}$ (only) चिन्मात्रम् (consciousness only)।
4. नरः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (human) वा ${ }^{0}$ (or) वानरः (A type of human monky such as Hanumat)।
5. ऋण्ण ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (in debt) अधमः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (lower) अधमर्णः (debtor)।

There are some कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासs which are called "मध्यमपदलोपी", a compound in which the middle word is elided:

1. शाकम्रियः (one whose favourite is vegetable) पार्थिवः (name of king) शाकपार्थिवः।
2. द्यधिकाः (greater by two) दश (ten) द्वादरा (twelve)।
3. षोडरासझ्झकाः (one whose number is sixteen) उपचाराः (offering) षोडरोपचाराः।

For example, a sentence "महान ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (great) च असौ राजा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (king)" is qualified to be compounded as a कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समास by a regulation of Pāṇini-sūtra. The compound word will be "महाराजः (a great king)"

महान् राजा This is a लौकिकविग्रहः, a sentence in natural language.

1) महत्+सुँ+राजन्+सुँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, the same sentence in grammatical breakdown. Being समासः, they are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम्
2) महत्+ +राजन्+ All सुप-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) महा +राजन् By 6.3.46 आन्महतः समानाधिकरणजातीययोः।, महत् is changed to महा.
4) महा + राज 5.4.91 राजाहःसखिभ्यष्टच्।।, राजन becomes राज, an अ-ending.
5) महाराज This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "महाराज" declines as अ-ending masculine, because, in a तत्पुरुषसमास, the उत्तरपद determines the gender and number of the समास.

## Exercise 1:

Following the example, give लौकिकविग्रह with conversion of the case and type of समास as well as अलौकिकविग्रह for the समासवृत्ति listed below. And also write shorthand parsing signs.

1. ज्ञानाग्निना KT
2. परमात्मानम्
3. दीर्घकालेन
4. सूक्ष्मशरारीरः
5. राजर्षये
6. काशीनगरे
7. सत्त्वगुणेषु
8. देवर्षोनाम्
9. सर्वभूतहिते
10. बुद्यिगुहायाम्
11. लोकमहेश्वरम्

Example for 1:
लौकिकविग्रहः ज्ञानम् एव अग्निः ज्ञानाग्मिः। कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः (KT)। तेन ज्ञानाग्मिना अलौकिकविग्रहः ज्ञान + सुँ + अग्नि + सुँ

## Exercise 2:

By parsing the sentence, give विग्रहवाक्य for समासवृत्ति, translate the following sentences.

1. अहं सर्वयज्ञानां भोत्ता अस्मि।
2. उत्तमपुरुषः परमात्मा इति उदाहृतः।
3. सर्वभूतेषु अहं समः।
4. अहं देवानां महर्षीणां च आदिः।
5. भगवद्गीतासु पुरुषोत्तमयोगः नाम पश्चद्राः अध्यायः।
6. अयोध्यापुर्यां दरारथराजः आसीत्।
7. दशरथपुत्रः वीर्यपुरुषः हनुमता सह लङ्झादेरां अगच्छत्।
8. महर्षयः कैलासपर्वते चिरकालं ध्यायन्ति ।

## h. नजु-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type NT)

These are the things to be known about नजु-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- "नञ", a negative particle
- ज् is इत् letter.

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- Of नज, ज् is elided as it is an इत् letter, and न् is elided, thus only "अ" remains, when compounded.
- When उत्तरपद begins with a vowel, न is added after the अ, thus it becomes "अन".

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- नज् is usually told as "न" in the विग्रहः
$\square$ नज् has 6 meanings. (See the entry अ of The Student's Sanskrit-English Dictionary)

1. सादृइय-अर्थे likeness or resemblance e.g. अब्राह्मणः one who is like ब्वाह्मणः.
2. अभाव-अर्थ absence or negation e.g. अक्रोधः
3. भेद/अन्य-अर्थ difference or distinction e.g. अपटः not a cloth, different from a cloth.
4. अल्प-अर्थे not enough e.g. अलवणम, अश्रद्धा, I have no money.
5. अप्रारास्त्य-अर्थे badness or unfitness e.g. अकार्यः not fit to be done
6. विरोध-अर्थे opposition e.g. अधर्मः, असुरः।
$\square$ The following sloka tells the six meaning of नज्.
तत्साहृइयमभावश्व तदन्यत्वं तदल्पता। अप्रारास्त्यं विरोधश्च नजर्था षट् प्रकीर्तिताः ॥

Examples of नज--तत्पुरुष-समासः:

1. न (not) ब्राह्मणः (brahmin) अब्राह्मणः (non-brahmin) ।
2. न धर्मः इति अधर्मः।

## Exercise 1:

Following the example, give लौकिकविग्रह with conversion of the case and type of समास as well as अलौकिकविग्रह for the समासवृत्तिs listed below. And also write shorthand parsing signs.

1. अज्ञानेन
2. आनित्यम्
3. अकर्मणः
4. अननुनासिकाः
5. अनात्मानम्

Example for 1:
लौकिकविग्रहः न ज्ञानम् इति अज्ञानम्। नज्-तत्पुरुष-समासः (NT)। तेन अज्ञानेन
अलौंकिकविग्रहः नज् + सुँ + ज्ञान+ सुँ

## Exercise 2:

By parsing the sentence, give विग्रहवाक्य for समासवृत्ति, translate the following sentences.

1. त्वम् अशोच्यान् अनुइोचसि ।
2. अशान्तस्य कुतः सुखम्।
3. अनाशिनः अप्रमेयस्य इमे देहाः।
4. अकर्मणः कर्म ज्यायः।
5. अयम् अच्छेद्यः अदाह्यः अक्लेद्यः अरोष्यः एव च ।
6. कृतेन अकृतं न अस्ति।
7. अयम् अव्यक्तः आचिन्त्यः आविकार्यः उच्यते ।
8. अप्राप्तस्य प्राप्तिः योगः उच्यते ।
9. किं वचनीयं, किम् अवचनीयम्।
10. सः आत्मानम् अकर्तारम् अभोक्तारम् असक्तम् पइयति।
11. अनभिहिते कर्मणि द्वितीयाविभक्तिः प्रयुज्यते।
12. अज्ञानवान् पुरुषः।

## i. कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समासः

These are the things to be known about कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद्

- A particle "कु", indicating "deficiency", "littleness", etc.
- Words termed as "गति", certain particles which have connection with धातु. i.e. उपसर्गs, च्चेँ (तद्दितप्रत्यय)-ending word, अन्तस, तिरस, आविस, प्रादुस, साक्षात, मिथ्या, etc.
- 22 particles belong to प्रादिगण, but not qualified as उपसर्ग.

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender of the उत्तरपद्

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समास is नित्यसमास. Thus they all have अस्वपदाविग्रह.
- In विग्रहवाक्य, the पूर्वपदs which are specified in 1) are explained with other words.

Examples of कु-गति-प्रादि-तत्पुरुष-समास:

1. कुत्सितः (wicked) पुत्रः कुपुत्रः। (कु-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)
2. कुत्सिता (weak) मतिः कुमतिः। (कु-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)
3. विशोषेण ज्ञायते अनेन इति विज्ञानम् (वि + ज्ञा + ल्युट्)। (गति-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)
4. अशुक्कं शुक्कं कृत्वा इति शुक्कीकृत्य। (गति-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)

Notice that कत्वा is substituted by ल्यप् because of being a समास.
5. अन्तर्भावः (being included)। तिरस्कृत्य (having covered)। आविर्भूतम् (that which is manifested), आविष्करणम् (manifesting)। प्रादुर्भावः (becoming visible)। साक्षात्कृतः (that which is clearly seen)। मिथ्याचारः (improper conduct)। (गति-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)
6. शोभनः पुरुषः सुपुरुषः। (प्रादि-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)
7. प्रगतः आचार्यः प्राचार्यः (प्रादि-type तत्पुरुषसमासः)

## j. उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समासः (Type UT)

$\square$ उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास is understood well when studied under the subject of उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय, a type of कृत्-प्रत्यय.
$\square$ उपपद literally means "a word (पद) which is near (उप)". However, the nearness is in terms of the meaningful connection.
$\square$ उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय requires not only a धातु to which it is suffixed, but also an उपपद, a word which is meaningfully connected to the धातु, as a कर्म, अधिकरण, etc.
$\square$ उपपद-कृत-प्रत्ययs are defined in the section of Pāṇini-sūtras starting from 3.2.1
$\square$ उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास is a type of compound in which the उपपद and the धातु with a उपपद-कृत्प्रत्यय are compounded.


For example, of a लौकिकविग्रह sentence "कुम्भं करोति", "कुम्भम्", a कर्म of करोति, is qualified to be an उपपद according to a Pāṇini-sūtra, by which a कृत्-प्रत्यय "अण्" is enjoined to the धातु कृ. Thus it is now कृदन्त, not तिङन्तपद anymore. Then both words are qualified to be compounded. This operation is reflected in the अलौकिकविग्रह:.

कुम्भं करोति This is a लौकिकविग्रहः.

1) कुम्भ + अम् + कृ + अण् This is an अल्लौकिकविग्रहः. Being समासः, it is प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) कुम्भ $+\quad+$ कृ + अ All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक. इत् letter is elided.
3) कुम्भ + + कार् + अ Being a णित्. अण् causes वृद्दि to its अङ, कृ धातु.
4) कुम्भकार This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "कुम्भकार" declines in the gender of the word qualified by the समास,

## "कुम्भकार".

These are the things to be known about उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- Certain nouns, termed "उपपद", which is related to a धातु in the उत्तरपद.

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- The उत्तरपद was originally तिङन्त्त in लौकिकविग्रह. However, in अलौकिकविग्रह, in stead of तिङ्-प्रत्यय, उपपद-कृत-प्रत्यय is suffixed to the धातु, thus the उत्तरपद् becomes कृदन्त.
- By default, the कर्ता of the धातु is denoted by the उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय.

3) Special modification of compounded words

- When forming उत्तरपद, necessary changes to the धातु caused by उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय will take place.

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Same gender as that qualified by the उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- In लौकिकविग्रह, तिङन्त्त-पद is seen, while धातु and कृत्-प्रत्यय are seen in अलौकिकविग्रह.
- उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्ययs denote कर्ता by default.

Here are some examples of उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समासs.

* "अण्" प्रत्यय to any धातु with कर्म-उपपद (3.2.1 कर्मण्यण् । ~ प्रत्ययः परश्व धातोः)

लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः
सूत्राणि करोति (makes) इति सूत्रकारः ।
ओदनं (rice) पचति (cooks) इति ओदनपाचः ।
हव्यं (oblation) वहति (carries) इति हव्यवाहः ।

अलौकिकविग्रहः

सूत्र + रास् + कृ + अण्
ओदन + अम् + पच् + अण्
हव्य + अम् + वह् + अण्

The feminine form of अण-ending word takes a स्रीप्रत्यय "डीप" (ई). Thus the प्रातिपादिक becomes सूत्रकारी, and it declines like नदी.

夫 "क" प्रत्यय to आ-ending धातु with कर्म-उपपद (3.2.3 आतोऽनुपसर्गे कः । ~ प्रत्ययः परश्च धातोः कर्मणि) लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः अलौकिकविग्रहः

वरान (boons) ददाति (gives) इति वरदः (giver of boons)। वर + रास् + दा + क

नृन् (people) पाति (protects) इति नृपः (king) ।
नृ + रास् + पा + क
कृतं (what made you) जानाति (knows) इति कृतज्ञः । कृत + अम् + ज्ञा + क

The following is a रूपसिद्वि, a प्रक्रिया (process) of making उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास by suffixing "क" as उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय.

वरान् ददाति
This is a लौकिकविग्रहः.

1) वर + रास् + दा + क This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः.

उपपद-कृत्-पत्यत्य "क" is suffixed to धातु "दा" (3P) to give.
Being समासः, it is प्रातिपदिकम.
2) वर $+\quad+$ दा + अ All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक. इत् letter is elided.
3) वर $+\quad+$ दु + अ When this प्रत्यय क follows, the last आ of the अङ drops.
4) वरद This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "वरद" declines in the gender of the word qualified by the समास, "वरद". In masculine and neuter, it declines as अ-ending, while in feminine, it declines as आending because of स्त्रीप्रत्यय टाप् (आ).

* "क" to स्था धातु with सुबन्त as उपपद् (3.2.4 सुपि स्थः। ~ प्रत्ययः परश्व धातोः कः) लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः

अलौकिकविग्रहः
गृहे ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (at home) तिष्ठति (stays) इति गृहस्थः (householder)।

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { गृह + डि + स्था + क } \\
& \text { मध्य + डि + स्था + क }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\text { अन्त }{ }^{7 / 1} \text { (at the end) तिष्ठति इति अन्तस्थः । अन्त+ डि + स्था + क }
$$

Because the suffix is the same "क", the रूपसिद्धि will be the same as above.

* "ट" to कृ धातु in the sense of "cause, habit, agreeable" with कर्म-उपपद
(3.2.20 कृजः हेतु-ताच्छील्य-अनुलोम्येषु। ~ प्रत्ययः परश्च धातोः कर्मणि) लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः अलौकिकविग्रहः

यइः (fame) करोति (causes) इति यरास्करः।
यरास् + अम् + कृ + ट
अर्थं (wealth) करोति (habitually makes) इति अर्थकरः ।
अर्थ + अम् + कृ + ट
वचनं (words) करोति (follows) इति वचनकरः।
वचन + अम् + कृ + ट

The following is a रूपसिद्दि of making उपपद्-तत्पुरुष-समास with उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय "ट".

यशःः करोति This is a लौकिकविग्रहः.

1) यरास् + अम् + कृ + ट This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः.

उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय "ट" is suffixed to धातु "कृ" (8U) to do.
Being समासः, it is प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) यरास् $+\quad+$ कृ + अ All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक. इत् letter is elided.
3) यरास् + + कर् + अ गुण takes place in the अङ्.
4) यरास्कर This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "यरास्कर" declines in the gender of the word qualified by the समास, "यरास्कर". In masculine and neuter, it declines as अ-ending. The feminine form of ट-ending word takes a स्रीप्रत्यय "ङीप्" (ई). Thus the प्रातिपादिक becomes यरास्करी, and it declines like नदी.

## * "ड" to गम् धातु with certain उपपद

(3.2.48 अन्त-अत्यन्त-अध्व-दूर-पार-सर्व-अनन्तेषु डः। ~ प्रत्ययः परश्च धातोः कर्मणि गमः )

लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः
पारं (the other side) गच्छति (goes) इति पारगः ।
सर्वं (everywhere) गच्छति (goes) इति सर्वगः ।

अलौकिकविग्रहः
पार + अम् + गम् + ड
सर्व + अम् + गम् + ड The प्रत्यय ड being डित, the one who has ड् as इत् letter, the टि (a part of अझ्भ starting from the last vowel until the end) of the अङ्भ is elided. In masculine and neuter, it declines as अending, while in feminine, it declines as आ-ending because of स्रीप्रत्यय टाप् (आ).


The following is a रूपसिद्दि of making उपपद-तत्पुरु-समास with उपपद-कृत-प्रत्यय "क्विप".
कर्म करोति
This is a लौकिकविग्रहः.

1) कर्मन् + अम् + कृ + क्विप् This is an अलौकिकविग्रहःः उपपद-कृत-प्रत्यय "किवप्" is suffixed to धातु "कृ" (8U) to do.
Being समासः, it is प्रातिपदिकम.
2) कर्मन् + अम् + कृ
3) कर्मन्+ + कृ
4) कर्मन् + कृ + त्
5) कर्म + कृत्
6) कर्मकृत् This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "कर्मकृत" declines in the gender of the word qualified by the ससाम, "कर्मकृत". In all genders, the प्रातिपदिक is त-ending. The feminine form of विवप-ending word does not take any स्रीप्रत्यय.

Examples of क्विप्-ending उपपद-तत्पुरुष-समास from शास्त्र :
शुचौ सीदति गच्छति इति शुचिषत् हंसः।
अन्तरिक्षे आकारो सीदति गच्छति इति अन्तरिक्षसत् वसुः।
नृषु मनुष्येषु सीदति तिष्ठति इति नृषत्।

## Exercise 1:

What is the व्युत्पत्ति of the following उपपदतत्पुरुषसमास words? Answer in the format of the example answer.

1. कर्मकृत्
2. विश्वजित्
3. ग्रामणीः
4. वेदविद्

Example answer to 1:
The व्युत्पत्ति of the word कर्मकृत् is analyzed as follows:
a) This is a कृदन्त word.
b) The धातु is कृ (to do)
c) The कृत-प्रत्यय is क्विपे. Thus this is called क्विबन्त word.
d) उपपद is कर्म
e) विग्रह is "कर्म करोति इति कर्मकृत".
f) The suffix denotes the कर्ता of the action. Thus, this is कर्तरि व्युत्पत्तिः.

Exercise 2: Find क्विबन्त words which are उपपदतत्पुरुषसमास, identify their धातुs, give विग्रह्वाक्य for क्रिबन्त कृद्वृत्ति, and translate the following sentences by parsing each word.

1. स्वयंभूः सृजति।
2. शास्त्रविदः वदान्ति ।
3. उपनिषद̆ं पठिष्यामः।
4. सर्वविदा विश्वं सृज्यते।
5. इदें शास्त्रं संप्रदायविन्भिः उपदिरयते।
6. संरायच्छिदे नमः।
7. जलमुचः जलं पतति।
8. उपनिषदां तात्पर्यं विचार्यते।
9. उपनिषदि वाक्यानि सन्ति।
10. उपनिषत्सु संवादाः श्रूयन्ते।

* "णिनिँ" to any धातु in the sense of "doing ... as one's nature" with सुबन्त as उपपद् (3.2.78 सुपि अजातौ णिनिः ताच्छील्ये। ~ प्रत्ययः परश्व धातोः)

लौकिकविग्रहः and समासवृत्तिः
उष्णं (hot) भुङ्के (eats) तच्छीलः (that nature) अस्य अस्ति इति उष्णभोजी । सत्यं (truth) वदाति (speaks) तच्छीलः अस्य अस्ति इति सत्यवादी । मोक्षं (liberation) ददाति (gives) तच्छीलः अस्य अस्ति इति मोक्षदायी। मोक्षं (liberation) करोति (makes) तच्छीलः अस्य अस्ति इति मोक्षकारी । अग्रे (in front) गच्छति (goes) तच्छीलः अस्य अस्ति इति अग्रगामी । कैलासे (in kailāsa) निवसति (lives) तच्छीलः अस्य अस्ति इति कैलासनिवासी ।

अलौकिकविग्रहः
उष्ण + अम् + भुज् + णिनिँ
सत्य + अम् + वद्न + णिनिँ
मोक्ष + अम् + दा + णिनिँ
मोक्ष + अम् + कृ + णिनिँ
अग्र + डि + गम् + णिनिँ
कैलास + ङि + नि + वस् + णिनिं

The following is a रूपसिद्दि of making उपपद्-तत्पुरुष-समास with उपपद-कृत-प्रत्यय "णिनिँ".

मोक्षं करोति This is a लौकिकविग्रहः.

1) मोक्ष + अम् + कृ + णिनिँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः.

उपपद-कृत्-प्रत्यय "णिनिँ" is suffixed to धातु "कृ" (8U) to do.
Being समासः, it is प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) मोक्ष + अम् + कृ + इन् ण् and इँ of णिनिँ are इत् letters. Thus they are elided.
3) मोक्ष $+\quad+$ कृ + इन् All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
4) मोक्ष + कार् + इन् Being णित, णिनिँ प्रत्यय causes वृद्दि on ॠ at the end of अङ्भ (Topic IV).
5) मोक्षकारिन् This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

णिनिँ-ending word declines as इन-ending word, like योगिन. The feminine form of णिनिंending word takes a स्रीप्रत्यय "ङीप्" (ई). Thus the प्रातिपादिक becomes मोक्षकारिणी, and it declines like नदी.

## 3. बहुवीहि-समासः (Type B)

For बहुवीहि-समास, generally, meaning of अन्यपद (another word than पूर्वपद or उत्तरपद) has predominance.

In that case बहुव्वीहिसमास is called अन्यपदार्थ-प्रधान, a compound whose predominant meaning is other than its constituents.

For example, for a compound "पीताम्बर", which is बहुव्रीहि-समास, indicates "विष्णु", whose clothes (अम्बर) is yellow (पीत). The meaning of the compound is another word (अन्यपद) than "पीतम्" as पूर्वपद, or "अम्बरम" as उत्तरपद.

E.g., पीतम् अम्बरं यस्य सः पीताम्बरः = विष्णुः ।

- पीतम् = पूर्वपदम्
- अम्बरम् $=$ उत्तरपदम्
- पीताम्बरः = समासवृत्तिः/समासः/समस्तपद्म्
- विष्णु: = अन्यपदम्
$\square$ There is a way to describe a बहुव्रीहिसमास by giving 2 categories:

1. तदुणण-संविज्ञान-बहुव्रीहिसमासः

In the meaning of अन्यपद, the meaning of the words in the compound is seen.
E.g., पीतम् (yellow) अम्बरं (clothes) यस्य सः पीताम्बरः विष्णुः ।

In विष्णु, the meaning of the words in the compound, which are "yellow" and "clothes", is seen.
2. अतदुणु-संविज्ञान-बहुवीविसमासः

In the meaning of अन्यपद, the meaning of the words in the compound is NOT seen.
E.g., दृष्टः (seen) समुद्रः (ocean) येन (by whom) सः दृष्टसमुद्रः देवदत्तः।

In देवदत्त, the meaning of the words in the compound, which are "seen" and "ocean", is not seen.

There are some types of बहुव्रीहि-समासs. Each one of them will be elaborated in the following section.
a. General बहुर्वीहि-समासः (1to 7B)
E.g. पीतम् अम्बरं यस्य सः पीताम्बरः = विष्णुः। 116B
b. नज्-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (NB)
E.g., अविद्यमानः ईश्वरः यस्य सः अनीश्वरः = पुरुषः।
c. सह-बहुव्वीहि-समासः (SB)
E.g., लक्ष्मणेन सह वर्तते इति सलक्ष्मणः = रामः ।
d. प्रादि-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (PB)
E.g., निर्गताः मोहाः यस्मात् सः निर्मोहः = पुरुषः ।

At the end of any type of बहुव्रीहि-समास, a तद्वित-प्रत्यय "कप्" can be suffixed.
$\square$ By the कप-प्रत्यय, it is easy to identify बहुव्वीहि-समास from other types of समासs.
E.g., बह्मविषयकं ज्ञानम्। (Knowledge, whose subject matter is बह्मन)
$\square$ When feminine suffix टाप् (आ) is added after कप्-प्रत्यय, an अ before कप्-प्रत्यय is replaced by इ.
E.g., त्रिगुणाः (3 guṇas) आत्मा (nature) यस्याः (whose) सा त्रिगुणात्मिका माया।

## a. General बहुवीीहि-समासः (Type 1~7B)

$\square$ In this type of compound, a group of nouns together designates another word.
$\square$ Generally nouns in this compound have to be in apposition (समानाधिकरण).In some compounds, nouns which are not in apposition (व्यधिकरण) are observed.

These are the things to be known about बहुव्रीहि-समासs.

1) Which noun can be compounded as पूर्वपद

- Any noun
- When a noun termed निष्ठा (क्त, क्तवतुँ ending), or $7^{\text {th }}$ case ending noun is compounded, it should be the पूर्वपद.

2) With which noun as उत्तरपद

- Any noun

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Gender and number of अन्यपद, the meaning of the बहुव्रीहि-समास.

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- Relative pronoun (यद्), which corresponds to the compound, is used in लौकिकविग्रह.
- The यद् will always be in a case other than $1^{\text {st }}$ case, while a corresponding तद् will always be in the $1^{\text {st }}$ case.

For example:
शुद्दं सत्त्वं (= अन्तःकरणं) यस्य सः शुद्दूसत्त्वः (= पुरुषः)। The one whose mind is pure is called शुद्दसत्त्वः.
Note that the gender of the compound is masculine. This is because the qualified word is masculine, even when सत्त्व is a neuter word and its adjective शुद्ध also becomes neuter.

Also "शुद्द" is termed "निष्ठा" because it is a क्त-प्रत्यय-ending word (शुध् + त). In the compound, a word termed निष्ठा should be पूर्वपद.

## Examples of बहुवीहिसमास:

1. श्रोत्रादिः श्रोत्रं आदिः यस्य सः श्रोत्रादिः (= a group consisting श्रोत्र, चक्षुस, etc.)।

The one whose (यस्य) beginning (आदिः) is श्रोत्रम, that (सः) is called श्रोत्रादिः.
2. ऊर्ध्वमूलः ऊर्ध्वं मूलं यस्य सः ऊर्ध्वमूलः (= वृक्षः)।

The one whose (यस्य) root (मूलं) is up (ऊर्ध्वं), that (सः) is called ऊर्ध्वमूलः.

Note: Even though the end of the compound is "मूल", a neuter word, the compound declines in masculine because the gender of the qualified word, वृक्ष, is masculine.
3. त्यक्तैषणः त्यक्ताः एषणाः येन सः त्यक्तैषणः (= पुरुषः)।

By whom (येन) desires (एषणाः) are given up (त्यक्ताः), he (सः) is called त्यक्तैषणः.

Note: Also in this case, the compound declines in masculine singular even though "एषणाः" is a feminine plural word.
4. अनेकवक्रनयनम् अनेकानि वक्राणि नयनानि यस्मिन् तत् अनेकवक्रनयनं (= विश्वरूपम)। In which (यस्मिन) many (अनेकानि) mouths (वक्राणि) and eyes (नयनानि) exists, that (तत) is अनेकवक्रनयनम, a description of विश्वरूपम्.
5. निश्चयात्मिका निश्चयः आत्मा स्वभावः यस्याः सा निश्चयात्मिका (= बुद्यिः)। Of which (यस्याः) the nature, स्वभावः (आत्मा) is ascertainment (निश्वयः), that (सा) is निश्चयात्मिका, an adjective to बुद्दि:.

The following is a रूपसिद्वि, a प्रक्रिया (process) of making this compound "त्यक्तैषण", indicating a masculine word "पुरुष":

1) त्यक्ता+जस्+एषणा+जस् This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, a grammatical breakdown of the sentence above. Being समासः, they are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम्.
2) त्यक्ता ++ एषणा + All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) त्यक्त + एषणा When two feminine words are in समानाधिकरण in a compound, and the पूर्वपद (त्यक्ता) has a masculine form (त्यक्त) in the same meaning, then the पूर्वपद takes the masculine form.
4) त्यक्तैषणा

By 6.1.88 वृद्दिरेचि।, "अ" and "ए" together becomes " $\mathrm{i} "$.
5) त्यक्तैषण When a compound ends with a long vowel, and the last word is but not point the meaning of the compound, the last long vowel becomes ह्रस्व (short).

This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.
Now the new प्रातिपदिक "त्यक्तैषण" declines as अ-ending masculine.

The following is a रूपसिद्धि, a प्रक्रिया (process) of making this compound "निश्वयात्मिका", indicating a feminine word "बुद्धि":

1) निश्वय+सुँ +आत्मन्+सुँ This is an अलौकिकविग्रहः, a grammatical breakdown of the sentence above. Being समासः, they are also qualified as प्रातिपदिकम.
2) निश्वय + +आत्मन् + All सुपू-प्रत्ययs are elided inside प्रातिपदिक.
3) निश्चयात्मन् + कप् At the end of बहुव्रीहिसमास, a तद्यितप्रत्यय "कप्" (पू is इत) can be suffixed.
4) निश्वयात्मन् + क By 8.2.7 नलोपः प्रातिपदिकान्तस्य।, the last न् of the प्रातिपदिक and पद is elided.
5) निश्चयात्मक + टाप् Since this compound is qualifying a feminine word (बुद्दि), a स्री-प्रत्यय टाप् (ट् and प् are इत) is suffixed.
6) निश्चयात्मि + क + आ When आ is suffixed, an अ before क् belongs to the प्रत्यय has to be replaced by इ.
7) निश्रयात्मिका This is the final form of समास. It is also a प्रातिपदिक.

Now the new प्रातिपदिक "निश्चयात्मिका" declines as आ-ending feminine.

## Exercise 1:

Change the समासवृत्ति and लौकिकविग्रह into बहुवचन (plural).
E.g., शुद्धं सत्त्वं यस्य सः शुद्दूत्त्वः। शुद्दंं सत्त्वं येषां ते शुद्दसत्त्वाः।

1. प्रवृत्तिः लक्षणं यस्य सः प्रवृत्तिलक्षणः (=धर्मः)।
2. जितानि इन्द्रियाणि येन सः जितेन्द्रियः (= पुरुषः)।
3. निवृत्ताः कामाः यस्मात् सः निवृत्तकामः (= पुरुषः)।
4. विगता स्पृहा यस्मात् सः विगतस्पृहः (= पुरुषः)।
5. स्थिता धीः यस्य सः स्थितधीः (= मुनिः)।
6. ब्रह्मणि निष्ठा यस्य सः बह्मनिष्ठः (= गुरुः)।
7. विचित्राणि रूपाणि यस्य तत् विचित्ररूपम् (= पुष्पम)।
8. कर्ता तन्त्रं (principle) यस्य तत् कर्तृतन्त्रम् (= कर्म)।
9. बहूनि पुष्पाणि यस्यां सा बहुपुष्पा (= लता)।
10. बह्यःः शाखाः यस्याः सा बहुराखा (= बुद्दिः)।

## Exercise 2:

Change the विभक्ति of the समासवृत्ति as indicated. Then change into बहुवचन.
E.g., शुद्दं सत्त्वं यस्य सः शुद्दूसत्त्वः in $3^{\text {rd }}$ case

शुद्धं सत्त्वं यस्य सः शुद्दूसत्त्वः तेन शुद्वसत्त्वेन। शुद्दं सत्त्वं येषां ते शुद्दसत्त्वाः , यैः शुद्दसत्त्वैः।

1. कृतानि कृत्यानि यस्य सः कृतकृयः (= पुरुषः)। in $5^{\text {th }}$ case
2. कृतः निश्चयः येन सः कृतनिश्चयः (= पुरुषः)। in $4^{\text {th }}$ case
3. गता व्यथा यस्मात् सः गतव्यथः (= पुरुषः)। in $7^{\text {th }}$ case
4. इत् संज्ञा यस्य सः इत्संज्ञकः (= वर्णः)। in $6^{\text {th }}$ case
5. लोपः संज्ञा यस्य तत् लोपसंज्ञकम् (= अदर्शानम)। in $3^{\text {rd }}$ case
6. भक्तिः पूर्वा यस्मात् तत् भक्तिपूर्वकम् ( $=$ कर्म)। in $5^{\text {th }}$ case
7. नाना पुष्पाणि यस्यां सा नानापुष्पा ( $=$ माला)। in $3^{\text {rd }}$ case

## Abbreviation of बहुव्रीहि-समास

Abbreviations giving a shorthand analysis of compounds can be made using the case numbers of the लौकिकविग्रह.
E.g., शुद्दूसत्त्वः is a बहुव्रीहि-समास indicating a person because his सत्त्व (अन्तःकरण) is शुद्द. लौकिकविग्रह of this compound is "शुद्दं ${ }^{1 / 1}$ सत्त्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ सः शुद्दूसत्त्वः".

- The abbreviation of this compound type is " 116 B ".
- The first " 1 " represents the $1^{\text {st }}$ case of the first word "शुद्धं ${ }^{1 / 1 "}$ of the समास.
- The second " 1 " represents the $1^{\text {st }}$ case of the second word "सत्त्व ${ }^{1 / 1 "}$ " of the समास.
- The " 6 " before " $B$ " represents the $6^{\text {th }}$ case of "यस्य $6 / 1$ " in the विग्रह.
- "B" stands for बहुव्वीहिसमास.

In the same manner,
नीलः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (blue) कण्ठः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (throat) यस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ सः नीलकण्ठः (= शिवः)। 116B
जितानि ${ }^{1 / 3}$ (conquered) इन्द्रियाणि ${ }^{1 / 3}$ येन $^{3 / 1}$ (by whom) सः जितेन्द्रियः (= पुरुषः)। 113B
वीतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (gone) रागः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यस्मात् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ (from whom) सः वीतरागः (= पुरुषः)। 115B
बहूनि ${ }^{1 / 3}$ (plenty) फलानि ${ }^{1 / 3}$ यस्मिन् ${ }^{7 / 1}$ (in which) तत् बहुफलं (= वनम)। 117B
जपे ${ }^{7 / 1}$ निष्ठा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ सः जपनिष्ठः (= पुरुषः)। 716B

Exercise 3: Parse each word of the विग्रह by giving प्रातिपदिकं, लिङ्भः, विभक्तिः, वचनम् and translation. Also give the abbreviation.

1. महान्तौ बाहू यस्य सः महाबाहुः (=अर्जुनः)।
2. अवगतं तत्त्वं यैः ते अवगततत्त्वाः (ज्ञानिनः)।
3. उत्तं लक्षणं यस्य सः उक्तलक्षणः (= आत्मा)।
4. अहं परः येषां ते मत्पराः (भक्ताः)।
5. शामः आदिः यस्य तत् शामादि (= षट्कम)।
6. उपसर्गाः पूर्वाः यस्मात् सः उपसर्गपूर्वकः (=धातुः)।
7. विदितः आत्मा येन सः विदितात्मा (= पुरुषः)।
8. द्वे कर्मणी यस्य सः द्विकर्मकः (= धातुः)।
9. गतं भयं यस्मात् सः गतभयः (= पुरुषः)।
10. वीराः पुरुषाः यस्मिन् सः वीरपुरुषः (= ग्रामः)।
11. वक्ष्यमाणानि लक्षणानि यस्य सः वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणः (= विषयः)।
In the reverse order, लौकिकविग्रह can be regenerated by referring to the abbreviation of the compound.
E.g., समासवृत्तिः विदिततत्त्वानाम् ${ }^{6 / 3}$ (पुरुषाणाम) 11-3B

लौकिकविग्रहः विदित ${ }^{1 / 1}$ तत्त्व ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यैः ${ }^{3 / 3}$ ते ${ }^{1 / 3}$ विदिततत्त्वाः ${ }^{1 / 3}$, तेषाम् ${ }^{6 / 3}$ ।
Translation: By whom (यैः) truth (तत्त्व) is known (विदित), they (ते) are विदिततत्त्वाः. Of them (तेषाम).

- The original form of समासवृत्ति is in $6^{\text {th }}$ case. Because the definition has to be provided in the first case, the $6^{\text {th }}$ case is removed and expressed as "तेषाम ${ }^{6 / 3 "}$ " in the विग्रह.
- The original form of the समासवृत्ति is plural. Thus the definition is given in the plural as well, as in "ते ${ }^{1 / 3}$ विदिततत्त्वाः ${ }^{1 / 3 "}$.
- The " 3 " before "B" represents the $3^{\text {rd }}$ case of यद्. Thus "यै: $3 / 3$ " should be in the विग्रह.
- तत्त्व is a neuter word. Since it is represented by " 1 " in the abbreviation, the $1^{\text {st }}$ case neuter form "तत्त्व ${ }^{1 / 1 "}$ comes as the second word in the विग्रह.
- विदित is also represented by " 1 ", the same case as तत्त्व. Thus the $1^{\text {st }}$ case neuter form "विदित ${ }^{1 / 1 "}$ comes as the second word in the विग्रह.

Exercise 4: Give लौकिकविग्रह of the following बहुव्रीहिसमासवृत्ति according to the above method of abbreviations.
E.g., राब्दादीनाम् (= विषयानाम) 116B

राब्दः आदिः येषां ते राब्दादयः, तेषाम् शब्दादीनाम् ।

1. शब्दादीन् (= विषयान) 116B
2. मनःषष्ठानाम् (= इन्द्रियाणाम) 116 B
3. गतसझ्झस्य (= पुरुषस्य) 115B
4. ब्रह्मनिष्ठम (= ज्ञानिनम) 716B
5. ज्ञानाग्निदग्धकर्माणम् (= पुरुषम) 3116 B
6. तद्बुद्द्ययः (= भक्ताः) 716B
7. साक्षात्कृतात्मानः (= ज्ञानिनः) 113B
8. गदापाणिना (= विष्णुना) 176 B
9. सुबन्तम् (= पदम) 176B
10. हलन्तः (= राब्द:) 176B

## Exercise 5:

Provide समासवृत्ति, abbreviation, declined form of each विग्रह.
E.g., त्रीणि अम्बकाणि यस्य सः ... (रिवः) ... , तस्मै ... ।

त्रीणि अम्बकाणि यस्य सः त्र्यम्बकः 116B, तस्मै त्र्यम्बकाय।

1. चत्वारः भुजाः यस्य सः ... (विष्णुः) ..., तस्मै ... ।
2. गजस्य आननम् इव आननम् यस्य सः ... (गणेशः) ... , तस्मै ... ।
3. ज्ञानं पूर्वं यस्मात् तत् ... (कर्म) ... , तस्य ... ।
4. तः (तकारः) परः यस्मात् सः ... (अत) ..., तस्य ... ।
5. प्र (उपसर्गः) पूर्वः यस्मात् सः ... (धातुः) ..., तस्य ... । (Apply कप-प्रत्यय)
6. अहं परः येषां ते ... (पुरुषाः) ..., तेषु ... ।
7. मयि मनः येषां ते ... (पुरुषाः) ..., तान् ... ।
8. महान् आत्मा (अन्तःकरणं) यस्य सः ... (पुरुषः) ..., तेन ... ।
9. एवं लक्षणं यस्य सः ... (विषयः) ..., तस्मिन् ... ।
10. ज्ञानेन च्छिन्नाः संरायाः यस्य सः ... (पुरुषः) ..., तं ... ।

Exercise 6:
Provide लौकिकविग्रह of the समासवृत्तिs in the sentences:

1. हे गङ्झे तरलतरदे।
2. द्विविधा निष्ठा।
3. हे देवि भक्तपूजितचरणे।
4. नानाविधानि पुष्पाणि।
5. सच्चिदानन्दस्वरूपः आत्मा।
6. ज्ञानस्य आत्मविषयकत्वम् अस्ति ।
7. आत्मविषयकं ज्ञानम्।
8. अवर्णपूर्वकस्य यकारस्य लोपः।
9. एतस्य कर्मणः विज्ञानपूर्वकत्वं हृइयते।
10. सुखदुःखादिभोगायतनं शरीरम्।
11. देवदत्तकर्तृकग्रामकर्मकगमनक्रिया।
12. विविक्तदृष्टयः पुरुषाः पइयन्ति ।
13. मन्मना भव मद्भक्तः मद्याजी नमस्कुरु।
14. अदन्तस्य अङस्य दीर्घः।
15. गतासून् अगतासून च न अनुझोचन्ति पणिडताः।
16. चिन्मुद्राङ्जितहस्तकाय नमः।

## b. नजु-बहुवीहि-समासः (Type NB)

$\square$ In the sense of "one who/which does not have ...", नज्-बहुवीहि-समास is used.

These are the things to be known about नज--बहुवीहि-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as पूर्वपद

- नज़ (negative particle)

2) With which noun as उत्तरपद

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- In the same manner as in नज्-तत्पुरुषसमास, नज् undergoes the modifications as mentioned below.
- Of नज, जू is elided as it is an इत् letter, and न् is elided, thus only "अ" remains, when compounded.
- When उत्तरपद begins with a vowel, न is added after the अ, thus it becomes "अन".

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Gender and number of the word qualified by the बहुव्रीहि-समास.

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- A present participle "अविद्यमान" (non-existing) is generally used as an adjective to the object indicated by the उत्तरपद in the compound.
- A declined form of a relative pronoun "यद्न" is used in लौकिकविग्रह, as in general बहुव्रीहिसमास.
E.g., अविद्यमानः निकेतः (a house) यस्य सः अनिकेतः (= पुरुषः)।

The one who does not have a house is called अनिकेतः.

Exercise: Give लौकिकविग्रह of following समासवृत्तिs.

1. अखिलं जगत्।
2. अश्रद्यः पुरुषः।
3. अनपेक्षः
4. अमनाः
5. अनीश्वरः रिावः।
6. अनघः अर्जुनः।
7. अचक्षु:
8. अपाणि

## c. सह-बहुव्रीहि-समासः (Type SB)

$\square$ In the sense of "one who/which exist with ...", सह-बहुव्रीहि-समास is used.

These are the things to be known about सह-बहुव्रीहि-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as पूर्वपद

- सह (indeclinable with)

2) With which noun as उत्तरपद्

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- सह is optionally modified into "स". This optional change is commonly seen.

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Gender and number of the word qualified by the बहुव्रीहि-समास.

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- Since सह governs $3^{\text {rd }}$ case, सह along with a $3^{\text {rd }}$ case ending word, and a तिङन्त्त word with धातु indicating "to be" are usually seen in विग्रह.
E.g. 1, लक्ष्मणेन सह वर्तते इति सलक्ष्मणः (= रामः)। One who exists with लक्ष्मण is called सलक्ष्मणः. E.g. 2, पादेन (a quarter) सह वर्तते इति सपादम् । सपाद-त्रिवादनम (quarter past three o'clock)

Exercise : Give लौकिकविग्रह of समासवृत्ति.
E.g., एषः धातुः सेट् । इटा ( $3 / 1$ of इट्) सह वर्तते इति सेट् (=धातुः) ।

1. संसारः समूलः निवर्तते।
2. श्रुतिः तदेव सविशोषकं वक्ष्यति।
3. एतत् सोपाधिकम् उच्यते।
4. तत्र जनाः सगुणम् उपास्यम् उपासते।
5. एतस्मिन् विषये नित्यं सापेक्षम् ।
6. साध्यं ससाधनम् अत्र प्रतिपाद्यते ।
7. एतेषां सुखानि सातिशायानि एव।
8. एषा प्रवृत्तिः फलाभिसन्धिपूर्विका साहङ्ङारा च भवति ।
9. सः मां साधिभूतं साधिदेवं साधियज्ञं च जानाति।

## d. प्रादि-बहुवीहि-समासः (Type PB)

$\square$ When the पूर्वपद of a बहुवीहि-समास is one of the 22 particles of the प्रादिगण, that compound is called प्रादि-बहुव्रीहि-समास.

These are the things to be known about प्रादि-बहुव्रीहि-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as पूर्वपद

- 22 particles of the प्रादिगण

1. प्र
2. परा
3. अप
4. सम्
5. अनु
6. अव
7. निस्
8. निर्
9. दुस्
10. दुर्
11. वि
12. आङ्•
13. नि
14. अधि
15. अपि
16. अति
17. सु
18. उद्
19. अभि
20. प्रति
21. परि
22. उप
2) with which noun as उत्तरपद

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Gender and number of the word qualified by the बहुव्रीहि-समास.

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- The प्रादि particle may be expanded in the लौकिकविग्रह.
E.g. 1, निर्गताः गुणाः यस्मिन् तत् निर्गुणम्। In which all qualities are gone is called निर्गुणम्.
E.g. 2, इोभनं मनः यस्य सः सुमनाः। The one whose mind is good is called सुमनाः. (अस-ending masculine)

Exercise : Give लौकिकविग्रह of समासवृत्ति.
E.g., निर्मानमोहानाम् अधिकारित्वम्। निर्गताः मानाः मोहाः येम्यः ते निर्मानमोहाः, तेषाम्।

1. निष्कामं कर्म करोति आत्मशुद्वये।
2. ज्ञानिनः कर्म निर्बीजं भवति।
3. निरहङ्झारस्य पुरुषस्य निर्ममत्वम् अपि अस्ति।
4. निरतिशायं सुखं विन्दुति।
5. धार्तराष्ट्रस्य दुब्बुद्धे: प्रियं करोति।
6. एषः निरपेक्षः।

## 4. दून्द्व-समासः (Type D)



- The meanings of both words have equal predominance. (उभयपदार्थ-प्रधानम)
$\square$ Two or more words connected with च are compounded. This kind of compound is called द्वन्द्व-समासः.
$\square$ There are 2 types of द्वन्द्व-समास
a. इतरेतर-द्वन्द्ध-समासः (ID)

When the members are linked together by a common predicate, and aggregation among the members is intended, those members can be compounded as इतरेतर-द्वन्द्दसमास.
E.g., रामश्च लक्ष्मणश्च रामलक्ष्मणौ ।
b. समाहार-द्वन्द्व-समासः (SD)

When the sense of group (समाहार) is predominant, members in the group can be compounded as समाहार-द्वन्द्ध-समास.
E.g., पाणी (hands) च पादौ (feet) च एतेषां (of them) समाहारः(a group) पाणिपादम् । पुत्रश्च पौत्रश्च अनयोः समाहारः पुत्रपौत्रम्।

When द्वन्द्वसमासवृत्ति is compounded into another समास, each member of द्वन्द्वसमास is connected to the word in another compound, just as " $(a+b) c=a c+b c$ ".
Ex. 1, "शुभाशुभफलम" can be understood as शुभफलम् and अशुभफलम्
Ex. 2, "पुत्रवित्तलोंकैषणाः" is divided into पुत्रैषणा, वित्तैषणा, and लोकैषणा.
Ex. 2, "नित्यशुद्धबुद्यमुक्तस्वभावः" is divided into नित्यशुद्ध, नित्यबुद्ध, and नित्यमुक्त.
Then, ते (those are) स्वभावाः (the nature) यस्य (for whom) सः नित्यशुद्धबुद्दमुक्तस्वभावः।

## a. इतरेतर-द्वन्द्ध-समासः (Type ID)

$\square$ When the members are linked together by a common predicate, and aggregation among the members is intended, those members can be compounded as इतरेतर-द्वन्द्धसमास.

These are the things to be known about इतरेतर-द्बन्द्व-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded

- anything

2) With which noun

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- In some particular combination, the पूर्वपद may undergo changes.

Ex. 1, दिव् + पृथिवी = द्यावापृथिव्यौ
Ex. 2, मातृ + पितृ $=$ मातापितरौ
Ex. 3, जाया + पति = दुपती
4) Gender and number of the compound

- Gender of the last member

Ex. 1, रामश्व सीता च रामसीते ।
Ex. 2, सीता च रामश्च सीतारामौ।

- Number will be the total number of the members.

Ex. 1, फलं च पुष्पं च पलपुष्पे।
Ex. 2, फलं च पुष्पे च पलपुष्पाणि।
5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

For example:
रामश्च लक्ष्मणश्च रामलक्ष्मणौ।
पुत्रश्व दाराश्व (wife) गृहश्व (house) पुत्रद्रारगृहाः ।

## Exercise 1:

Give समासवृत्ति and type of समास based on the provided लौकिकविग्रह.
E.g., पुत्रश्च दाराश्च गृहश्श पुत्रदारगृहाः । इतरेतरद्वन्द्वसमासः (ID)

1. जन्म च मृत्यु: च जरा च व्याधिः च ... । ... ()
2. तुः च स् च मः च ... । ... ()
3. कटुः च अम्लः च लवणः च अत्युष्णः च अतितीक्ष्णः च रूक्षः च विदाही (प्रातिपदिकम् = विदाहिन) च । ... । ... ()
4. सुहतत च मित्रं च अरिः च उदासीनः च मध्यस्थः च द्वेष्यः च बन्धुः च ... । ... ()

Exercise 2:
Give समासवृत्ति and type of समास based on the provided लौकिकविग्रह.
E.g., पुत्रश्च दाराश्च गृहश्च पुत्रदारगृहाः। इतरेतरद्वन्द्वसमासः (ID),

पुत्रदारगृहाः आदयः येषां ते पुत्रदारगृहादयः। बहुव्वीहिसमासः (11-6B)

1. इष्टः च अनिष्टः च ... । ... (), इषानिष्टनाम् उपपत्तिः ... । ... ()
2. स्थूलं च सूक्ष्मं च कारणं च ... । ... (), स्थूलसूक्ष्मकारणानि रारीराणि ... । ... ()
3. चक्षुः च श्रोत्रं च ... । ... (), चक्षु:श्रोत्रे आदौ येषां तानि ... । ... (), चक्षु:श्रोत्रादीनि इन्द्रियाणि ... । ... ()
4. सुखं च दुःखं च ... । ... (), समे सुखदुःखे यस्य सः ... । ... ()
5. सूत्रं च भाष्यं च ... । ... (), सूत्रभाष्ये कुरुतः ... । ... ()
6. ज्ञानं च कर्म च ... । ... (), ज्ञानकर्मणोः निष्ठे ... । ... ()
7. मानः च मोहः च ... । ... (), निर्गतौ मानमोहौ यस्मात् सः ... । ... ()

Exercise 3:
Give लौकिकविग्रह of the following समासवृत्तिs:

1. पुत्रदारगृहादिषु असक्तिः।
2. सुह्टन्मित्रार्युदासीनमध्यस्थद्वेष्यबन्धुषु समबुद्धि: विशिष्यते।
3. जन्ममृत्युजराव्याधिभिः दुःखापन्नः जीवः।

## 4. इष्टानिष्टोपपत्तिषु समचित्तत्वम् ।

5. स्थूलसूक्ष्मकारणशरीरेषु अभिमानः अस्ति ।
6. चक्षुःश्रोत्रादीन्द्रियाणाम् अधिष्ठातारः देवताः उच्यन्ते।
7. ज्ञानकर्मनिष्ठयोः विभागं प्रदर्शायन् सः आह।

## b. समाहार-द्वान्द-समासः (Type SD)

$\square$ When the sense of group (समाहार) is predominant, members in the group can be compounded as समाहार-द्वन्द्व-समास.

These are the things to be known about समाहार-द्वन्द्व-समास.

1) Which noun can be compounded as a पूर्वपद

- anything

2) With which noun, as an उत्तरपद

- anything

3) Special modification of compounded words

- $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{a}$

4) Gender and number of the compound

- Always neuter in gender and singular in number

5) Special note on विग्रहवाक्यम्

- A word "समाहारः (group)" with a $6^{\text {th }}$ case ending word is used.
E.g., पाणी ${ }^{1 / 2}$ च पादौ ${ }^{1 / 2}$ च एषां ${ }^{6 / 3}$ (of these) समाहारः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ (a group) पाणिपादम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ ।
$\square$ When the members of the द्वन्द्वसमास indicate the following meanings, the द्वन्द्वसमास becomes एकवचन (singular) in number and नपुंसक (neuter) in gender, thus categorized as समाहार-द्वन्द्व-समास.
- parts of body

Ex. 1, पाणी (hands) च पादौ (feet) च एषां समाहारः पाणिपादम्।
Ex. 2, शिरः (head) च ग्रीवा (back part of neck) च अनयोः समाहारः शिरोग्रीवम्।

- classes of non-living beings

Ex. 1, यवसं (grass) च अन्नं (rice) च उदकें (water) च इन्धनं (fuel) च एषां समाहारः यवसान्नोदकेन्धनम्।

- combinations of certain nouns

Ex. 1, अहः (day) च रात्रिः (night) च अहोरात्रम्।
Ex. 2, पुत्रश्च पौत्रश्च अनयोः समाहारः पुत्रपौत्रम् ।

- etc.
$\square$ The following compounds are optionally neuter in gender and singular in number. Thus the compound can be इतरेतर-द्वन्द्ध-समास or समाहार-द्बन्द्-समास.
- Trees, wild animals, grass, grains, seasoning, domesticated animals, birds

Ex. 1, व्रीहयः (rice) च यवाः (barley) च व्रीहियवम, or वीहियवाः ।
Ex. 2, दधि (curd) च घृतं (ghee) च दधिघृतम, or दधिघृते।
Ex. 3, गावः (cows) च महिषाः (buffaloes) च गोमहिषम, or गोमहिषाः।

- पूर्व and पर

Ex., पूर्वं (before) च परं (after) च पूर्वपरम, or पूर्वपरे।

- अधर and उत्तर

Ex., अधरम् (lower) च उत्तरं (upper) च अधरोत्तरम, or अधरोत्तरे।

- Opposite qualities, when a substance is not qualified by them

Ex. 1, सुखं च दुःखं च सुखदुःखम, or सुखदुःखे।
Ex. 2, प्रियं च अप्रियं च प्रियाप्रियम, or प्रियाप्रिये।
Ex. 3, धर्मः च अधर्मः च धर्माधर्मम, or धर्माधर्मो।

- etc.

Exercise:
Break down the following समासवृत्तिs.
E.g., नित्यानित्यवस्तुविवेकः।


6T

नित्यं च अनित्यं च नित्यानित्ये/नित्यानित्यम्। इतरेतर/समाहार-द्वन्द्य-समासः
नित्यानित्ये वस्तुनी नित्यानित्यवस्तुनी। कर्मधारय-तत्पुरुष-समासः
नित्यानित्यवस्तुनोः विवेकः नित्यानित्यवस्तुविवेकः। षष्ठी-तत्पुरुष-समासः

1. गुरुवेदान्तवाक्येषु विश्वासः श्रद्या।
2. सगुणवह्मविषयकमानसव्यापारः।
3. साधनसाध्यसम्बन्धः।
4. प्रतिपादकप्रतिपाद्यसम्बन्धः।
5. चक्षुरादिबाह्योन्द्रियनिग्रहः।
6. सच्चिदानन्दस्वरूपः।
7. शीतोष्पसुखदुःखादिसहिष्णुत्वम्।
8. अनेकजन्मसम्प्राप्तकर्मबन्धविदाहिने। आत्मज्ञानप्रदानेन तस्मै श्रीगुरवे नमः ॥
9. बह्मतत्त्वप्रकाराकाय नमः।
10. निगमान्तमहातत्त्वस्वरूपाय।
11. तत्त्वमर्थप्रबोधकाय नमः।
12. नानासुगन्धपुष्पाणि यथाकालोद्भवानि च। भक्तया दत्तानि पूजार्थं गृहाण परमेश्वर ॥
13. शुक्काम्बरधरं विष्णुं शारिवर्णं चतुर्भुजम्। प्रसन्नवदनं ध्यायेत् सर्वविघोपशान्तये ॥

## 5. Summary of समासवृतिः

| Type | प्रधानम | subcategory | Example with विग्रहवाक्य | Gender | Number |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. अव्ययीसमासः | पूर्वपदार्थः | - | शाक्तिम् ${ }^{2 / 1}$ अनतिक्रम्य ${ }^{0}$ यथाइाक्ति ${ }^{0}$ | नपुंसकल्डिङः | - |
| 2. तत्पुरुषसमासः | उत्तरपदार्थ: | कर्मधारयः (KT) | परम: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च असौ ${ }^{1 / 1}$ ईश्वर: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ च परमेश्शर: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ | Gender and number of the उत्तरपद, which may be the same as the ones of the qualified noun |  |
|  |  | द्वितीया (2T) | कृष्णं ${ }^{2 / 1}$ श्रितः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ कृष्णश्रितः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | तृतीया (3T) | गुणेन ${ }^{3 / 1}$ सम्पन्नः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ गुणसम्पन्नः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | चतुर्थी (4T) | गवे ${ }^{4 / 1}$ हित ${ }^{1 / 1}$ गोहितम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | पश्चमी (5T) | चोराद् ${ }^{5 / 1}$ भयं ${ }^{1 / 1}$ चोरभयम् ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | षष्टी (6T) | रामस्य ${ }^{6 / 1}$ दूतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ रामदूतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | सप्रमी(7T) | शास्त्र $7 / 1$ निपुनः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ शास्र्निपुनः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | नज़ (NT) | न ${ }^{0}$ विद्या ${ }^{1 / 1}$ आविद्या ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | कुगतिप्रादि | प्रगतः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ आचार्यः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ प्राचार्यः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | उपपद (UT) | कुम्भं ${ }^{2 / 1}$ करोति ${ }^{\text {II/ } / 1}$ इति कुम्भकारः ${ }^{1 / 1}$ |  |  |
| 3. बहुव्रीहि-समासः | अन्यपद-अर्थः | General | पीतम् ${ }^{\mathrm{n} / 1 / 1}$ अम्बरं ${ }^{\mathrm{n} / 1 / 1}$ यस्य ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 6 / 1}$ स: $\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1$ पीताम्बर: ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ कृष्णः ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ | Gender and number of the अन्यपद |  |
|  |  | सहपूर्वपदः (SB) | लक्ष्मणेन ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 3 / 1}$ सह ${ }^{0}$ वर्तते ${ }^{\mathrm{II} / 1}$ सः ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ सलक्ष्मणः ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ रामः ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ |  |  |
|  |  | नजबबहुव्रीहिः (NB) | अविद्यमानः $\mathrm{m}^{1 / 1 / 1}$ पुत्रः $\mathrm{m}^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ यस्य ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 6 / 1}$ स: $\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1$ अपुत्र: $\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1$ पुरुषः $\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1$ |  |  |
|  |  | प्रादिबहुवाहीहः | विगता ${ }^{1 / 1}$ तृष्णा ${ }^{1 / 1}$ यस्मात् ${ }^{m / 5 / 1}$ स: ${ }^{m / 1 / 1}$ वितृष्णः ${ }^{m / 1 / 1}$ पुरुषः ${ }^{m / 1 / 1}$ |  |  |
| 4. दृन्द्ध-समासः | उभयपद-अर्थः | इतरेतरः (ID) | सीता ${ }^{\mathrm{f} / 1 / 1}$ च राम: ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 1}$ च सीतारामौ ${ }^{\mathrm{m} / 1 / 2}$ | उत्तरपद's | total number |
|  |  | समाहारः (SD) | पाणी ${ }^{1 / 2}$ च पादो ${ }^{1 / 2}$ च एषां ${ }^{6 / 3}$ समाहार: ${ }^{1 / 1}$ पाणिपादम ${ }^{1 / 1}$ | नपुंसकल्डिझः | एकवचनम् |

# Topic X - एकरोषः - Ekaśeṣaḥ 

## Topic X <br> एकरोष:

## Ekaśeṣaḥ

## 1. Basic concept of एकरोष-वृत्तिः (A new nominal base derived

## by keeping one word out of many)

- Pāṇini-sūtras 1.2.64 to 1.2.73 form a section whose topic is एकरोष.
$\square$ When two or more प्रातिपदिकs are present together in a same sentense, only one (एक) remain (रोष) under certain conditions, which are told in the section of Pāṇini-sūtras. The प्रातिपदिक which remains is called एकरोषवृत्ति and it represents other प्रातिपदिकs.
$\square$ एकरोषवृत्ति is different from समासवृत्ति. एकरोष is a consolidation of certain प्रातिपदिकs while समास is compounding पदs. The rules for समास, compounding, in Pāṇini-sūtras are called पदाविधिs, injunctions for पदs, while the rules for एकरोष are not पदविधिs.
$\square$ When declining एकरोषवृत्ति, the number of the member in it is reflected by the वचन of सुप्-प्रत्यय.


## Appendix 1 - Extra information on णिच्

णिच् is suffixed in different senses :

1) Causative णिच् for any धातुs
2) स्वार्थे णिच् for धातुs in $10^{\text {th }}$ conjugation
3) स्वार्थे णिच् for any धातुs

## 1) Causative

For example, with reference to पच action, when there are only कर्ता and कर्म, etc., the धातु पच् without णिच् is used to express the activity. (See Figure 1) E.g., देवदत्तः ओदनं पचति।

When there is an impeller of the कर्ता, this factor is technically called हेतु as well as कर्ता. To express the activity of पच् involving the हेतु, णिच् should be added to the original धातु


Figure 1 पच् by 3.1.26 हेतुमति च।. (See Figure 2)

In the sentence with "पाचयति (पाचि, णिजन्तधातु + लट्/कर्तरि /III/1)", सोमदत्त, the कर्ता of "पाचि", takes $1^{\text {st }}$ case because he is denoted by the तिङ् of "पाचयति". देवदत्त as the कर्ता of "पच्", is undenoted by the तिड्. Undenoted कर्ता should take $3{ }^{\text {rd }}$ case. The कर्ता of original धातु is called "अणिकर्ता". ओदन, the undenoted कर्म by तिङ् takes $2^{\text {nd }}$ case. "सोमदत्तः देवदत्तेन ओदनं पाचयति।"


Figure 2

As an exception, कर्म status is given to अणिकर्ता when the following धातुs take णिच: A: गति-अर्थ (except नी and वह्), बुद्धि-अर्थ, and प्रत्यवसान-अर्थ (except अद् and खाद्न) B: रब्दकर्म (action involving speech, such as teaching)
C: अकर्मक (intransitive action)

Examples: (When णिजन्तधातु takes two कर्मs, आणिकर्ता is denoted in कर्मणि प्रयोग.) A:

माता (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तं (अणिकर्ता) ग्रामं गमयति/यापयति । माता (णिकर्ता) देवद्त्तेन (अणिकर्ता) भारं नाययति/वाहयति।

देवद्त्तः ग्रामं मात्रा गम्यते/याप्यते ।
भारः देवद्त्तेन मात्रा नाय्यते/वाह्यते ।

## Appendix 1 - Extra information on णिच्

गुरुः (णिकर्ता) माणवकं (अणिकर्ता) धर्मं बोधयति/वेदयति । माता (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तं (अणिकर्ता) ओदनं भोजयति/आरायति। माता (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तेन (अणिकर्ता) ओदनं आदयते/खादयति । B:
गुरुः (णिकर्ता) माणवकं (अणिकर्ता) वेदें पाठयति/अध्यापयति । C:

गुरुः (णिकर्ता) माणवकं (अणिकर्ता) आसयति/शाययति ।
Counter example 1 - Other than those 3 types:
सोमदत्तः (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तेन (अणिकर्ता) ओदनं पाचयति ।
Counter example 2 - णिकर्ता takes another णिकर्ता:
सोमदत्तः (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तं (अणिकर्ता) ग्रामं गमयति ।
विष्णुमित्रः (णिकर्ता) सोमदत्तेन (णिकर्ता) देवदत्तं (अणिकर्ता) ग्रामं गमयति ।
देवदत्तः ग्रामं सोमदत्तेन विष्णुमित्रेण गम्यते ।
2) स्वार्थे णिच् for धातुs in $10^{\text {th }}$ conjugation

धातुs under $10^{\text {th }}$ conjugation group in धातुपाठः take णिच् without additional meaning.
चुर् (10U) to steal चोरयति । पाल् (10U) to protect पालयति । भक्ष (10U) to eat भक्षयति । भूष् (10U) to adorn भूषयति । Note that causative form and non-causative form of धातुs in $10^{\text {th }}$ conjugation look the same.
3) स्वार्थे णिच for any धातुs

धृञ् (1U) to hold, to bear, to support
ईश्वरः विश्वं धारयति । भूतानि धारयामि। इदं जगत् धार्यते।

How णिजन्त-धातुs are treated:
$\square$ गिजन्त-धातुs are उभयपदिनः धातुs.
$\square$ णिजन्त-धातुs are सेट्. Thus इडागम will be added when suffixed with वलादि आर्धधातुक प्रत्ययs.
E.g., कारयितृ, कारयितुम, कारयित्वा (क्वा with इडागम can cause गुण in अङ्)
$\square$ When conjugating in लट्, लोट्, लङ्, and विधिलिङ्, additional suffix राप् in कर्तरि and यक् in कर्मणि are added. E.g., कारयति, कारयतु, अकारयत, कारयेत् in कर्तरि. For कर्मणि, see below.
$\square$ When followed by आर्धधातुक प्रत्ययs without इडागम, the last इ of णिजन्त-धातुs gets elided. E.g., कार्यते, कार्यताम, अकार्यत, कार्येत in कर्मणि. With कृत्-प्रत्ययs: स्थापन, स्थापक, विकार्य, etc.

Visit www.arshaavinash.in

## Website for free E-books on Vedanta and Sanskrit

All the E-books available on the website can be downloaded FREE!
PUJ YA SWAMI DAYANANDA SARASWATI- A BRIEF BIOGRAPHY BY N. AVI NASHI LI NGAM. It is available in English, Tamil, Hindi, Japanese and Portuguese.

SWAMI PARAMARTHANANDA'S TRANSCRIBED CLASS NOTES: Available class notes are Introduction to Vedanta, Tattva Bodha, Bhagavad Gita (3329 pages), Isavasya Upanisad, Kenopanisad, Kathopanisad, Prasna Upanisad, Mundaka Upanisad, Mandukya Upanisad with karika, Taittiriya Upanisad, Aitareya Upanisad, Chandogya Upanisad, Brihadarnyaka Upanisad (1190 pages), Kaivalya Upanisad, Brahma Sutra (1486 pages), Atma Bodha, Vivekachudamani (2038 pages), Panchadasi, Manisha Panchakam, Upadesha Saara, Saddarsanam, Jayanteya Gita, Jiva Yatra, Advaita Makaranda, Dakshinamurthy Stotram, Drg Drsya Viveka, Niti Satakam, Vairagya Sataka, Naishkarmya Siddhi, etc.

BRNI MEDHA MICHIKA'S BOOKS ON SANSKRIT GRAMMAR: Enjoyable Sanskrit Grammar Books- Basic Structure of Language, Phonetics \& Sandhi, Derivatives (Pancavrttayah), Dhatukosah, Astadhyayi, Study Guide to Panini Sutras through Lagu Siddhanta Kaumudi, Sanskrit Alphabet Study BooksSingle Letters, Conjunct Consonants.

There are many more books and articles on Yoga, Meditation, Holy chants, I ndian culture and Spirituality.



[^0]:    *1: All the प्रत्ययs enjoined under the whole $4^{\text {th }}$ and $5^{\text {th }}$ chapters are to be suffixed to प्रातिपदिकs. Pāṇini-sūtra 4.1.2 enjoins the 21 सुपू-प्रत्ययs. Sūtras 4.1.3 to 4.1.81 enjoin स्र्री-प्रत्ययs, additional प्रत्ययs suffixed to प्रातिपदिक to make them feminine. And the rest, almost two full chapters, enjoins तद्दित-प्रत्ययs.

